N8100-891F/919F

NEC Express5800/120Rd-1 User's Guide

1st Edition
7-2003
856-121699-503-0

PROPRIETARY NOTICE AND LIABILITY DISCLAIMER

The information disclosed in this document, including all designs and related materials, is the valuable property of NEC Corporation (NEC) and /or its licensors. NEC and/or its licensors, as appropriate, reserve all patent, copyright and other proprietary rights to this document, including all design, manufacturing, reproduction, use, and sales rights thereto, except to the extent said rights are expressly granted to others.

The NEC product(s) discussed in this document are warranted in accordance with the terms of the Warranty Statement accompanying each product. However, actual performance of each such product is dependent upon factors such as system configuration, customer data, and operator control. Since implementation by customers of each product may vary, the suitability of specific product configurations and applications must be determined by the customer and is not warranted by NEC.

To allow for design and specification improvements, the information in this document is subject to change at any time, without notice. Reproduction of this document or portions thereof without prior written approval of NEC is prohibited.

First Printing, July 2003
Copyright 2003
NEC Corporation
7-1 Shiba 5-Chome, Minato-Ku
Tokyo 108-8001, Japan
All Rights Reserved
Printed in Japan

Keep this User's Guide at hand for quick reference at anytime necessary.

SAFETY INDICATIONS

Follow the instructions in this User's Guide for your safety to use the server.

The server contains components with possible danger, hazards that may cause by ignoring warnings, and preventive actions against such hazards.

Server components with possible danger are indicated with a warning label placed on or around them as well as described in this User's Guide.

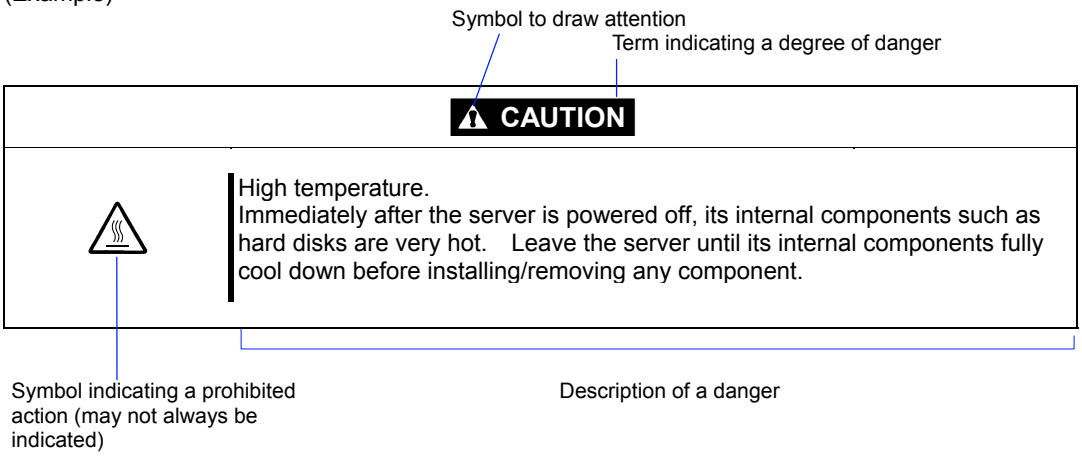
In the User's Guide or warning labels, "WARNING" or "CAUTION" is used to indicate a degree of danger. These terms are defined as follows:

⚠ WARNING	Indicates the presence of a hazard that may result in death or serious personal injury if the instruction is ignored.
⚠ CAUTION	Indicates the presence of a hazard that may cause minor personal injury, including burns, or property damage if the instruction is ignored.

Precautions and notices against hazards are presented with one of the following three symbols. The individual symbols are defined as follows:

	This symbol indicates the presence of a hazard if the instruction is ignored. An image in the symbol illustrates the hazard type. (Attention)
	This symbol indicates prohibited actions. An image in the symbol illustrates a particular prohibited action. (Prohibited Action)
	This symbol indicates mandatory actions. An image in the symbol illustrates a mandatory action to avoid a particular hazard. (Mandatory Action)

(Example)


Symbol to draw attention
Term indicating a degree of danger
⚠ CAUTION
High temperature.
Immediately after the server is powered off, its internal components such as hard disks are very hot. Leave the server until its internal components fully cool down before installing/removing any component.
Symbol indicating a prohibited action (may not always be indicated)
Description of a danger

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS USER'S GUIDE AND WARNING LABELS

Attentions

	Indicates that improper use may cause an electric shock.
	Indicates that improper use may cause personal injury.
	Indicates that improper use may cause fingers to be caught.
	Indicates that improper use may cause fumes or fire.
	Indicates a general notice or warning that cannot be specifically identified.
	Indicates that improper use may cause loss of eyesight due to laser beam.

Prohibited Actions

	Indicates a general prohibited action that cannot be specifically identified.
	Do not disassemble, repair, or modify the server. Otherwise, an electric shock or fire may be caused.

Mandatory Action

	Unplug the power cord of the server. Otherwise, an electric shock or fire may be caused.
	Indicates a mandatory action that cannot be specifically identified. Make sure to follow the instruction.

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

CE Statement

Warning: This is a Class A product. In domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures (EN55022).

BSMI Statement

警告使用者：

這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

Trademarks

NEC ESMPRO and NEC EXPRESSBUILDER are trademarks of NEC Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and MS-DOS are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
Intel and Pentium are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation.
Xeon is a trademark of Intel Corporation.
AMI, MegaRAID, and Power Console Plus are registered trademarks or trademarks of LSI Logic Corp.
Datalight is a registered trademark of Datalight, Inc.
ROM-DOS is a trademark of Datalight, Inc.
Novell and NetWare are registered trademarks of Novell, Inc. of the United States.
AT is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States and other countries.
Adaptec and its logo is a registered trademark of Adaptec, Inc. of United States.
SCSI*Select* is a trademark of Adaptec, Inc. of the United States.
Adobe, Adobe logo, and Acrobat are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
DLT and DLTtape are trademarks of Quantum Corporation of the United States.
All other product, brand, or trade names used in this publication are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective trademark owners.

Windows XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system and Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system.
Windows 2000 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server operating system and Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server operating system, and Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
Windows NT stands for Microsoft® Windows NT® Server network operating system version 3.51/4.0 and Microsoft® Windows NT® Workstation operating system version 3.51/4.0. Windows Me stands for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition Operating System. Windows 98 stands for Microsoft® Windows®98 operating system. Windows 95 stands for Microsoft® Windows®95 operating system.

Momentary voltage drop prevention:

This product may be affected by a momentary voltage drop caused by lightning. To prevent a momentary voltage drop, an AC uninterruptible power supply (UPS) unit should be used.

Notes:

(1) No part of this manual may be reproduced in any form without the prior written permission of NEC Corporation.

(2) The contents of this User's Guide may be revised without prior notice.

(3) The contents of this User's Guide shall not be copied or altered without the prior written permission of NEC Corporation.

(4) All efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy of all information in this User's Guide. If you notice any part unclear, incorrect, or omitted in this User's Guide, contact the sales agent where you purchased this product.

(5) NEC assumes no liability arising from the use of this product, nor any liability for incidental or consequential damages arising from the use of this User's Guide regardless of Item (4).

PREFACE

Welcome to the NEC Express5800/120Rd-1 server.

The NEC Express5800 server holds powerful performance and employs the latest technology to implement a computer for the next generation. With its potential capabilities, the server may be used as the workstation PC that configures a client-server system and provides high-speed processing and superior reliability.

Read this User's Guide thoroughly to fully understand handling of the server and appreciate its functions to the maximum extent.

ABOUT THIS USER'S GUIDE

This manual is a guide for proper setup and use of your server.
This manual also covers useful procedures for dealing with difficulties and problems that may arise during setup or operation of your server.
Keep this manual for future use.
The following describes how to proceed with this manual.

How to Use This Manual

To aid you in finding information quickly, this manual contains the following information:

Chapter 1 Notes on Using Your Server
includes information that needs attention to use the server. Make sure to read this chapter before setting up and using the server. It also includes requirements and advisory information for transfer and disposal of the server.

Chapter 2 General Description
includes information necessary to use the server, such as names and functions of its components, handling of the floppy disk and CD-ROM drives.

Chapter 3 Setting Up Your Server
tells you how to select a site, unpack the system, assemble the rack-mount subsystem, install the server into the rack assembly, make cable connections, and power on your system.

Chapter 4 Configuring Your Server
tells you how to configure the system and provides instructions for running the BIOS Setup Utility and the Adaptec Configuration Utility, which is used to configure SCSI devices in your system. This chapter also provides information on mother board jumper settings.

Chapter 5 Installing the Operating System with Express Setup
describes how to install the operating system.

Chapter 6 Installing and Using Utilities
describes how to install the utilities for the server. It also includes a description on using the attached CD-ROM "NEC EXPRESSBUILDER".

Chapter 7 Maintenance
provides you with all the information necessary to maintain successful operation of the server. This chapter also includes a description on relocating and storing the server.

Chapter 8 Troubleshooting
contains helpful information for solving problems that might occur with your system.

Chapter 9 Upgrading Your Server
provides you with instructions for upgrading your system with an additional processor, optional memory, optional add-in cards, hard disk drives, peripheral devices, and power supply.

Appendix A Specification
provides specifications for your server.

Appendix B Other Precautions
provides supplementary notes on using the server.

Appendix C IRQ and I/O Port Address
provides a list of factory-set IRQs and I/O port addresses assigned.

Appendix D Installing Windows Server 2003
describes how to install Microsoft Windows Server 2003 without using Express Setup. Using the Express Setup tool is recommended for installing Windows Server 2003. See Chapter 5 for details.

Appendix E Installing Windows 2000
describes how to install Microsoft Windows 2000 without using Express Setup. Using the Express Setup tool is recommended for installing Windows 2000. See Chapter 5 for details.

Appendix F Product Configuration Record Table
provides a table to be filled with your server configuration.

Text Conventions

The following conventions are used throughout this User's Guide. For safety symbols, see "SAFETY INDICATIONS" provided earlier.

IMPORTANT: Items that are mandatory or require attention when using the server

NOTE: Helpful and convenient piece of information

IN THE PACKAGE

The carton contains various accessories, as well as the server itself. See the packing list to make sure that you have everything and that individual components are not damaged. If you find any component missing or damaged, contact your sales agent.

- Store the provided accessories in a designated place for your convenience. You will need them to install an optional device or troubleshoot the server, as well as to set it up.
- Make a backup copy of each provided floppy disk, if any. Store the original disk as the master disk in a designated place, and use its copy.
- Improper use of any provided floppy disk or CD-ROM may alter your system environment. If you find anything unclear, immediately ask your sales agent for help.

(This page is intentionally left blank.)

CONTENTS

PREFACE i
ABOUT THIS USER'S GUIDE ii
In the Package iii

Chapter 1 Notes on Using Your Server 1-1

Warning Labels 1-2
Safety Notes 1-3
General 1-3
Power Supply and Power Cord Use 1-5
Rack 1-6
Installation, Relocation, Storage, and Connection 1-7
Cleaning and Working with Internal Devices 1-9
During Operation 1-10
For Proper Operation 1-11
Transfer to Third Party 1-12
Disposal and Consumables 1-13
User Support 1-14

Chapter 2 General Description 2-1

Overview 2-2
Front View with Front Bezel Closed 2-3
Front View with Front Bezel Removed 2-4
Rear View 2-5
Internal View 2-7
Mother Board 2-8
Status Indicators 2-9
POWER Lamp 2-9
STATUS Lamp 2-9
DISK ACCESS Lamp 2-11
ACT Lamp 2-11
UID Lamp (UID) 2-11
Disk Access Lamp 2-11
Hard Disk Lamp 2-12
LAN Connector Lamps 2-13
POST Lamp 2-14
Standard Features 2-15
Power Supply 2-16
Peripheral Bays 2-16
System Cooling 2-16
SAF-TE Logic 2-17

System Board Features 2-17
Processor 2-17
Memory 2-17
PCI Riser Slots 2-18
Video 2-18
SCSI Controller 2-18
Network Controller 2-19
Keyboard and Mouse 2-20
RJ-45 Serial Port 2-20
ACPI 2-20
System Board Management Controller (BMC) 2-21
Degradation Feature 2-22
Remote Power-On Feature (Wake On LAN) 2-22
AC-Link Feature 2-22
System Security 2-23
Security with Mechanical Locks and Monitoring 2-23
Software Locks via the BIOS Setup Utility 2-23
NEC EXPRESSBUILDER 2-27
NEC ESMPRO 2-28
Off-line Maintenance Utility 2-28
System Diagnostic Utility 2-28
NEC Management Workstation Application (NEC MWA) 2-28
Using Your Server 2-29
Front Bezel 2-29
POWER Switch 2-31
Identification of Servers ~ UID Switch ~ 2-36
Floppy Disk Drive 2-37
CD-ROM Drive 2-39

Chapter 3 Setting Up Your Server 3-1

SETUP FLOW 3-2
SELECTING SERVER SITE 3-3
UNPACKING THE SYSTEM 3-5
INSTALLING THE SERVER 3-6
Restricted Access Location 3-7
ESD Precaution 3-7
Checking Components 3-7
Required Tools 3-7
Installation Procedure for NEC Rack/Third Vendor's Rack 3-8
Removing the Server from the Rack Assembly 3-14
CONNECTING PERIPHERAL DEVICES 3-16
Connection to Serial Port 3-18
CONNECTING POWER CORD 3-19
TURNING ON THE SERVER 3-21
INSTALLING OPERATING SYSTEM 3-23
INSTALLING UTILITIES 3-23
MAKING BACKUP COPIES OF SYSTEM INFORMATION 3-24

Chapter 4 Configuring Your Server 4-1

System BIOS ~ SETUP ~ 4-1
Starting SETUP Utility 4-2
Description on On-Screen Items and Key Usage 4-3
Configuration Examples 4-4
Menu and Parameter Descriptions 4-9
SCSI BIOS ~ SCSI*Select* ~ 4-31
Using SCSI*Select* Utility 4-31
Configuring SCSI Controller on Mother Board 4-31
Configuring SCSI Controller on Optional Board 4-37
Configuring Mother Board Jumpers 4-38

Chapter 5 Installing the Operating System with Express Setup 5-1

About Express Setup 5-2
Microsoft Windows Server 2003 5-4
Installation Notice 5-4
The Flow of Setup 5-8
Installing and Setting Device Drivers 5-13
Setting for Solving Problems 5-18
Installing Maintenance Utilities 5-21
Updating the System 5-22
Making Backup Copies of System Information 5-22
Exceptional Setup 5-23
Microsoft Windows 2000 5-24
Installation Notice 5-24
The Flow of Setup 5-28
Installing and Setting Device Drivers 5-33
Setting for Solving Problems 5-37
Installing Maintenance Utilities 5-40
Updating the System - Installing Service Pack - 5-41
Making Backup Copies of System Information 5-41
Exceptional Setup 5-42

Chapter 6 Installing and Using Utilities 6-1

NEC EXPRESSBUILDER 6-2
NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for DOS-Based with Local Console 6-4
NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for DOS-based with Remote Console 6-9
Starting 6-10
NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for Windows-Based (Master Control Menu) 6-13
Configuration Diskette Creator 6-14
NEC ESMPRO 6-19
Functions and Features 6-19
NEC MWA 6-20
The Functions of MWA 6-21
System Requirements 6-22
Installation 6-23
Remote Management Configuration 6-24
Remote Management Configuration for the Server without Console 6-25

Power Console Plus 6-29
Major Functions 6-29
Components 6-29
Server Setup 6-31
Management PC Setup 6-32

Chapter 7 Maintenance 7-1

Making Backup Copies 7-1
Cleaning 7-2
Cleaning the Server 7-3
Cleaning the Interior 7-4
Cleaning the Keyboard/Mouse 7-5
Cleaning CD-ROM 7-6
System Diagnostics 7-7
Test Items 7-7
Starting and Ending the System Diagnostics 7-8
Relocating/Storing the Server 7-11

Chapter 8 Troubleshooting 8-1

System Viewers 8-2
Lamps 8-3
Error Messages 8-4
Error Messages after Power-on 8-4
POST Error Messages 8-5
Beep Codes 8-9
Solving Problems 8-10
Problems with the Server 8-10
Problems with NEC EXPRESSBUILDER 8-19
Problems with Express Setup 8-20
Problems with Master Control Menu 8-23
Problems with Configuration Diskette Creator 8-24
Problem with Disk Array 8-24
Collecting Event Log 8-25
Collecting Configuration Information 8-26
Collecting Dr. Watson Diagnostic Information 8-27
Memory Dump 8-27
Preparing for Memory Dumping 8-27
Saving the Dump File 8-28
Backup IPMI Information 8-29
Recovery for Windows 2000 System 8-30
Off-Line Maintenance Utility 8-33
Starting the Off-line Maintenance Utility 8-34
Features of Off-line Maintenance Utility 8-35
Resetting the Server 8-36
Forced Shutdown 8-36

Chapter 9 Upgrading Your Server 9-1

Safety Notes 9-2
Anti-static Measures 9-3
Preparing Your System for Upgrade 9-4
Device Installation or Removal Procedure 9-5
Hard Disk Drive 9-5
Server ~ Pull-out from the Rack ~ 9-12
Top Cover 9-14
DIMM 9-16
Processor (CPU) 9-21
PCI Board 9-27
Disk Array Controller Board 9-33

Appendix A Specifications A-1

Appendix B Other Precautions B-1

Transfer Rate of the On-board LAN Controller B-1
Server Management Software B-1
Floppy Disk B-1
CD-ROM B-4
Tape Media B-4
Keyboard B-5
Mouse B-6

Appendix C IRQ C-1

Appendix D Installing Windows Server 2003 ..... D-1

Before Installing Windows Server 2003 ..... D-1
Installing Service Pack D-1
Updating System D-1
Disk Configuration (Concerning the area displayed as 'MAINTE_P') D-1
Re-installing to the Hard Disk which has been upgraded to Dynamic Disk D-1
MO Device D-2
Partition Size D-2
Installing Windows Server 2003 ..... D-3
Creating "Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER" D-3
Windows Server 2003 Clean Installation D-5
Updating the System -Installing Service Pack - D-9
Driver Installation and Advanced Settings D-10
Install PROSet D-10
Network Driver D-11
Re-install the Network Driver D-12
Setting for Collecting Memory Dump (Debug Information) D-14

Appendix E Installing Windows 2000 ..... E-1

Before Installing Windows 2000 ..... E-1
Installing Service Pack E-1
Updating System E-1
Disk Configuration (Concerning the area displayed as 'MAINTE_P') E-1
Re-installing to the Hard Disk which has been upgraded to Dynamic Disk E-1
MO Device E-2
Partition Size E-2
Installing Windows 2000 ..... E-3
Creating "Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER" E-3
Windows 2000 Clean Installation E-5
Updating the System -Installing Service Pack - E-7
Driver Installation and Advanced Settings E-8
Install PROSetII E-8
Network Driver E-9
Re-install the Network Driver E-10
Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT)/Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB) E-11
Display Driver E-12
Setting for Collecting Memory Dump (Debug Information) E-12

Appendix F Product Configuration Record Table F-1

Hardware F-1
Software F-3

Chapter 1

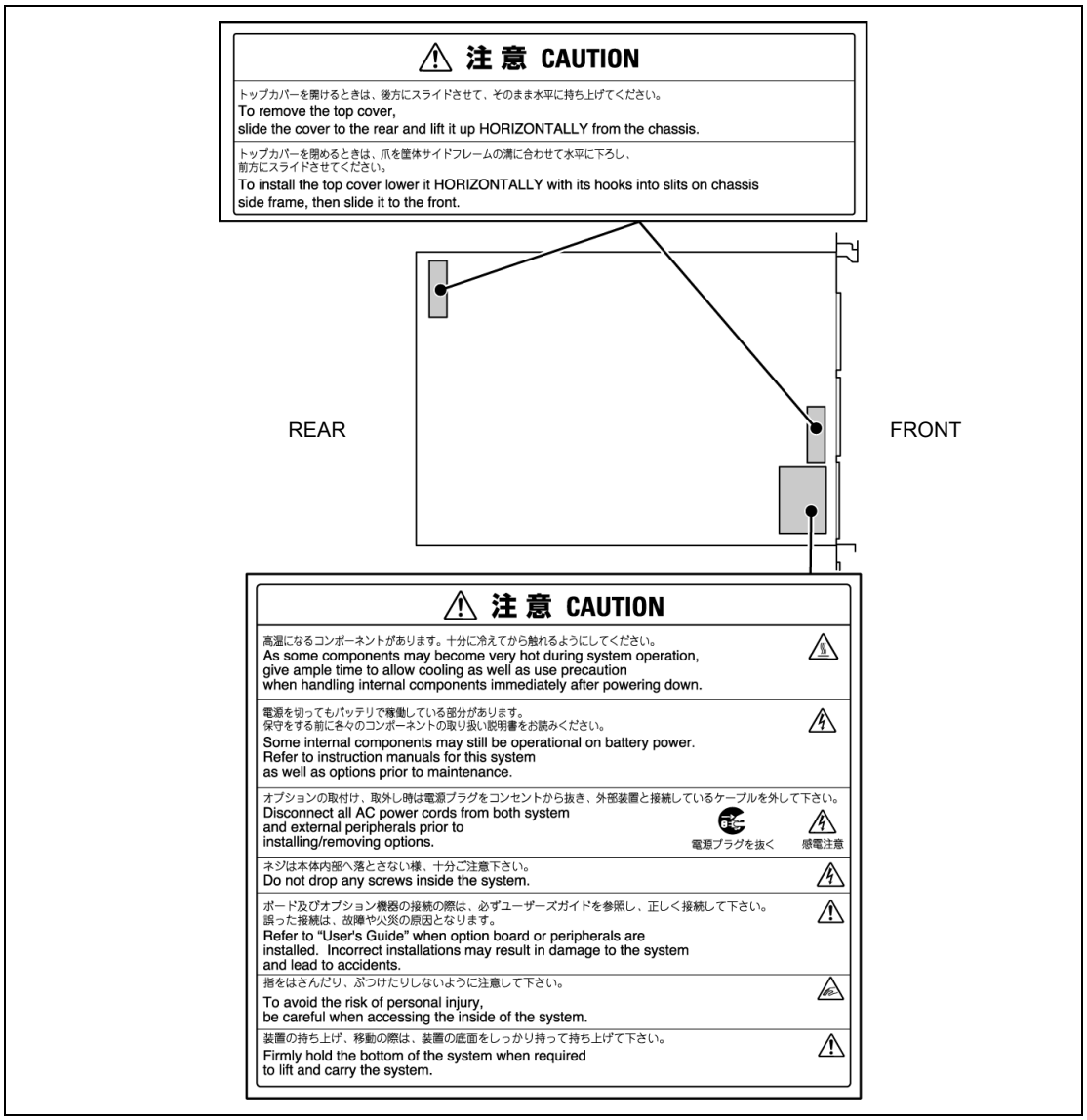
Notes on Using Your Server

This chapter includes information necessary for proper and safe operation of the server.

WARNING LABELS

The warning label is attached to components with possible danger or their vicinity in your server to inform the user that a hazardous situation may arise when operating the server. (Do not intentionally remove or damage any of the labels.)

If you find any labels totally/partially removed or illegible due to damage, contact your sales representative.


⚠ 注 意 CAUTION
トップカバーを開けるときは、後方にスライドさせて、そのまま水平に持ち上げてください。
To remove the top cover,
slide the cover to the rear and lift it up HORIZONTALLY from the chassis.
トップカバーを閉めるときは、爪を筐体サイドフレームの溝に合わせて水平に下ろし、
前方にスライドさせてください。
To install the top cover lower it HORIZONTALLY with its hooks into slits on chassis
side frame, then slide it to the front.
REAR
FRONT
⚠ 注 意 CAUTION
高温になるコンポーネントがあります。十分に冷えてから触れるようにしてください。
As some components may become very hot during system operation,
give ample time to allow cooling as well as use precaution
when handling internal components immediately after powering down.
電源を切ってもバッテリで稼働している部分があります。
保守をする前に各々のコンポーネントの取り扱い説明書をお読みください。
Some internal components may still be operational on battery power.
Refer to instruction manuals for this system
as well as options prior to maintenance.
オプションの取付け、取外し時は電源プラグをコンセントから抜き、外部装置と接続しているケーブルを外して下さい。
Disconnect all AC power cords from both system
and external peripherals prior to
installing/removing options.
電源プラグを抜く
感電注意
ネジは本体内部へ落とさない様、十分ご注意下さい。
Do not drop any screws inside the system.
ボード及びオプション機器の接続の際は、必ずユーザーズガイドを参照し、正しく接続して下さい。
誤った接続は、故障や火災の原因となります。
Refer to "User's Guide" when option board or peripherals are
installed. Incorrect installations may result in damage to the system
and lead to accidents.
指をはさんだり、ぶつけたりしないように注意して下さい。
To avoid the risk of personal injury,
be careful when accessing the inside of the system.
装置の持ち上げ、移動の際は、装置の底面をしっかり持って持ち上げて下さい。
Firmly hold the bottom of the system when required
to lift and carry the system.

SAFETY NOTES

This section provides notes on using the server safely. Read this section carefully to ensure proper and safe use of the server. For symbols, see "SAFETY INDICATIONS" provided earlier.

General

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the server for services where critical high availability may directly affect human lives.

Your server is not intended to be used with or control facilities or devices concerning human lives, including medical devices, nuclear facilities and devices, aeronautics and space devices, transportation facilities and devices; and facilities and devices requiring high reliability. NEC assumes no liability for any accident resulting in personal injury, death, or property damage if the server has been used in the above conditions.

Do not use the server if any smoke, odor, or noise is present.

If smoke, odor, or noise is present, immediately turn off the POWER switch and disconnect the power plug from the outlet, then contact your sales agent. Using the server in such conditions may cause a fire.

Keep needles or metal objects away from the server.

Do not insert needles or metal objects into ventilation holes in the server or openings in the floppy disk or CD-ROM drive. Doing so may cause an electric shock.

Do not use the server in any unapproved place.

Install the server on a standard EIA 19-inch rack assembly. Do not install the rack containing the server in a place inappropriate to the rack installation environment.
Failure to follow these instructions may cause some bad influences to be imposed on the server and other systems installed on the rack and also a fire or personal injury due to falling of the rack may occur. For the detailed explanation on the place where the server should be installed and the earthquake-resistant construction for the rack, refer to the manual attached to the rack or contact you sales agent.

Always install the server on a rack conforming to the relevant standard.

Install the server on a rack confirming to the EIA standard for the server to be used. Do not use the server with installed on any other rack than standard EIA 19-inch rack or without the installation on a proper rack. Failure to follow these instructions may cause the server to operate incorrectly and/or personal injury or damages of surrounding devices to occur. Contact your sales agent for the racks available for the server.

⚠ CAUTION

Keep water or foreign matter away from the server.

Do not let any form of liquid (water etc.) or foreign matter (e.g., pins or paper clips) enter the server. Failure to follow this warning may cause an electric shock, a fire, or a failure of the server. When such things accidentally enter the server, immediately turn off the power and disconnect the power plug from the outlet. Do not disassemble the server. Contact your sales agent.

Power Supply and Power Cord Use

⚠ WARNING

Do not hold the power plug with a wet hand.

Do not disconnect/connect the plug while your hands are wet. Failure to follow this warning may cause an electric shock.

Do not connect the ground wire to a gas pipe.

Never connect the ground wire to a gas pipe. Failure to follow this warning may cause a gas explosion.

⚠ CAUTION

Plug in to a proper power source.

Use a proper wall outlet. Use of an improper power source may cause a fire or a power leak.

Do not install the server where you need an extension cord. Use of a cord that does not meet the power specifications of the server may heat up the cord and cause a fire.

Do not connect the power cord to an outlet that has an illegal number of connections.

The electric current exceeding the rated flow overheats the outlet, which may cause a fire.

Insert the power plug into the outlet as far as it goes.

Heat generation resulting from a halfway inserted power plug (imperfect contact) may cause a fire. Heat will also be generated if condensation is formed on dusty blades of the halfway inserted plug, increasing the possibility of fire.

Use the authorized power cord only.

Use only the power cord that comes with the server. Use of an unauthorized power cord may cause a fire when the electric current exceeds the rated flow. Also, observe the following to prevent an electric shock or fire caused by a damaged cord.

- Do not stretch the cord harness.
- Do not pinch the power cord.
- Do not bend the power cord.
- Keep chemicals away from the power cord.
- Do not twist the power cord.
- Do not place any object on the power cord.
- Do not bundle power cords.
- Do not alter, modify, or repair the power cord.
- Do not secure the power cord with staples or equivalents.
- Do not use any damaged power cord. (Replace a damaged power cord with a new one of the same specifications. Ask your sales agent for replacement.)

Rack

⚠ CAUTION

Do not carry or install the server only by a single person.

More than one person is required to carry or install the rack. Failure to follow this instruction may cause the rack to fall to result in personal injury and/or breakages of surrounding devices. In particular, a high rack (such as 44U rack) is unstable if it is not fixed by stabilizers. More than one person must always carry or install the rack while they support it.

Do not install the server so that the load may be concentrated on a specific point.

Install stabilizers on the rack so that the total load of the rack and devices mounted on the rack is not concentrated on a singe point or join more than one rack with each other to distribute the load. Failure to follow this instruction may cause the rack to fall to result in personal injury.

Do not install components on the server only by a single person.

More than one person is required to install parts including the doors and trays for the rack. Failure to follow this instruction may cause some parts to fall to be broken and/or to result in personal injury.

Do not pull out a device from the rack if the rack is unstable.

Always pull out a device from the rack in the state that the rack is made stable (by the installation of stabilizers or earthquake-resistant construction).

Do not leave more than one device being pulled out from the rack.

Pulling out more than one device from the rack may cause the rack to be fallen. Only pull out a single device from the rack at a time.

Do not provide the wiring for the server to exceed the rating of the power supply.

To prevent burns, fires, and device damages, the power supplied to the power supply in the rack shall not exceed the rating load of the power branch circuit. Contact your electric constructor or the local power company for the requirements on the wiring and installation of electric facilities.

Installation, Relocation, Storage, and Connection

⚠ WARNING

Disconnect the power cord(s) before installing or removing the server.

Make sure to power off the server and disconnect the power cord(s) from a power outlet before installing/removing the server. All voltage is removed only when the power cords are unplugged.

⚠ CAUTION

Never attempt to lift the server only by yourself.

The server weighs max. 14 kg (depending on its hardware configuration). Carrying the server only by yourself may strain your back. Hold the server firmly by its bottom with another person to carry it. Do not hold the front door to lift the server. The front door may be disengaged from the server, causing personal injury.

Do not install the server in any place other than specified.

Do not install the server in the following places or any place other than specified in this User's Guide. Failure to follow this instruction may cause a fire.

- a dusty place
- a humid place such as near a boiler
- a place exposed to direct sunlight
- an unstable place

Do not install the server on a rack with leaving covers removed.

Do not install the server on a rack with the cover being removed. Failure to follow this instruction may reduce the cooling effect in the server to result in some malfunction and/or dusts to enter the server to result in a fire or electric shock.

Do not pinch your finger with rails or other components.

Note sufficiently that your fingers may not be caught between a rail and another mechanical part or cut by a rail at installation or removal of the server from the rack.

Do not apply any load on the server pulled out from the rack.

Do not apply any load on the server pulled out from the rack. Doing so bends the frame of the server. Consequently, the server cannot be pushed back into the rack. Placing an object on the server may also cause personal injury if the server drops.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not connect any interface cable with the power cord of the server plugged to a power source.

Make sure to power off the server and unplug the power cord from a power outlet before installing/removing any optional internal device or connecting/disconnecting any interface cable to/from the server. If the server is off-powered but its power cord is plugged to a power source, touching an internal device, cable, or connector may cause an electric shock or a fire resulted from a short circuit.

Do not use any unauthorized interface cable.

Use only interface cables provided by NEC and locate a proper device and connector before connecting a cable. Using an authorized cable or connecting a cable to an improper destination may cause a short circuit, resulting in a fire. Also, observe the following notes on using and connecting an interface cable.

- Do not use any damaged cable connector.
- Do not step on the cable.
- Do not place any object on the cable.
- Do not use the server with loose cable connections.

Cleaning and Working with Internal Devices

⚠ WARNING

Do not disassemble, repair, or alter the server.

Never attempt to disassemble, repair, or alter the server on any occasion other than described in this User's Guide. Failure to follow this instruction may cause an electric shock or fire as well as malfunctions of the server.

Do not look into the CD-ROM drive.

A laser beam is used in the CD-ROM drive. Do not look into or insert a mirror into the drive while the drive is powered. If a laser beam is caught in your eyes, you may lose your eyesight (the laser beam is invisible).

Do not remove the lithium battery.

The server contains the lithium battery. Do not remove the battery. Placing the lithium close to a fire or in the water may cause an explosion.

When the server does not operate appropriately due to the dead lithium battery, contact your sales agent. Do not disassemble the server to replace or recharge the battery by yourself.

Disconnect the power plug before cleaning the server.

Make sure to power off the server and disconnect the power plug from a power outlet before cleaning or installing/removing internal optional devices.
Touching any internal device of the server with its power cord connected to a power source may cause an electric shock even of the server is off-powered.

Disconnect the power plug from the outlet occasionally and clean the plug with a dry cloth. Heat will be generated if condensation is formed on a dusty plug, which may cause a fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid installation in extreme temperature conditions.

Immediately after the server is powered off, its internal components such as hard disks are very hot. Leave the server until its internal components fully cool down before installing/removing any component.

Make sure to complete board installation.

Always install a board firmly. An incompletely installed board may cause a contact failure, resulting in smoking or fire.

During Operation

⚠ CAUTION

Do not pull out or remove the server from the rack unnecessarily.

Do not pull out or remove the server from the rack unnecessarily. Pulling out or removing the server from the rack may cause not only the server to operate incorrectly but also the server to fall on people to make them injured.

Stay away from the fan.

Keep your hand or hair away from the cooling fan on the rear of the server. Failure to follow this warning may get your hand or hair caught in the fan, resulting in injury.

Avoid contact with the server during thunderstorms.

Disconnect the power plug from the outlet when a thunderstorm is approaching. If it starts thundering before you disconnect the power plug, do not touch any part of the server including the cables. Failure to follow this warning may cause a fire or an electric shock.

Keep animals away from the server.

Failure to follow this warning may cause a fire or an electric shock.

Do not place any object on top of the server.

The server may fall and cause property damage to the surroundings.

Do not leave the server with its CD-ROM tray ejected.

Dust may enter the server through openings and cause malfunctions of the server. Any person may also bump it and get injured.

Do not use a cellular phone or pager around the server.

Turn off the cellular phone or pager. Radio interference may cause malfunctions of the server.

FOR PROPER OPERATION

Observe the following notes for successful operation of the server. Use of the server ignoring the notes will cause malfunctions or failures of the server.

- Install the rack assembly in a place that meets requirements for successful operation. For details, see Chapter 3, "Setting Up Your Server."
- The server is intended for installation in a Restricted Access Location, mounted above a non-combustible material.
- Do not delete the hard disk partition exclusively provided for maintenance of the server although it may appear on the OS.
- Make sure to power off the server before connecting or disconnecting cables between the server and peripheral devices.
- Verify that the access lamp on the server is unlit before turning off the server or ejecting the floppy disk.
- The server management logic on your system board monitors and logs system voltage changes. When plugging the power cord to the system, you may experience 10 seconds delay from the time you press the POWER switch on the front panel. This is normal system operation and is required by the server management logic.
- Do not turn off the server until the "NEC" logo appears on the screen.
- When you have just turned off the server, wait at least 30 seconds before turning it back on.
- Turn off the power and unplug the power cord from the outlet before relocating the server.
- Clean the server on a regular basis. (See Chapter 7 for cleaning.) Regular cleaning proactively prevents various failures of the server.
- Lightning may cause a momentary voltage drop. To prevent this problem, it is recommended to use of an uninterruptible power supply unit.
- Make sure to use optional devices supported by the server. Some non-supported devices may be physically installed/connected but cause failures of the server as well as a malfunctions of the server.
- NEC recommends you use NEC's genuine products. Some third-party products claim that they support the server. However, repair of the server due to a failure or damage resulted from use of such third-party products will be charged.

TRANSFER TO THIRD PARTY

The following must be observed when you transfer (or sell) the server or software provided with the server to a third party:

Server

Make sure to provide this User's Guide along with the server to a third party.

Provided Software

To transfer or sell any software application that comes with the server to a third party, the following requirements must be satisfied:

- All provided software applications must be transferred and no backup copies must be retained.
- Transfer requirements listed in "Software License Agreement" that comes with each software application must be satisfied.
- Software applications that are not approved for transfer must be uninstalled before transferring the server.

DISPOSAL AND CONSUMABLES

- Dispose the server, all the internal devices, floppy disks, and CD-ROMs according to all national laws and regulations.

IMPORTANT: For disposal (or replacement) of the battery on the mother board of the server, consult with your sales agent.

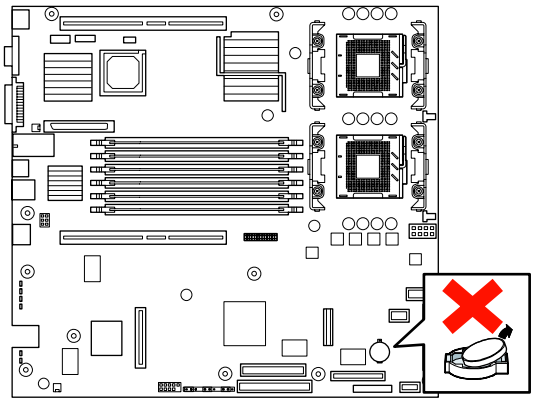
- The server contains some components that are only good for a limited period of time and require replacement, such as fans, internal batteries, the internal CD-ROM drive, the floppy disk drive, and the mouse. For stable operation of the server, NEC recommends you replace these components on a regular basis. Consult with your sales agent for replacement or the product lives.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove the lithium battery.

The server contains the lithium battery. Do not remove the battery. Placing the lithium or nickel cadmium battery close to a fire or in the water may cause an explosion.

When the server does not operate appropriately due to the dead lithium battery, contact your sales agent. Do not disassemble the server to replace or recharge the battery by yourself.



Mother board

USER SUPPORT

Before Asking for Repair, do the following when the server appears to fail:

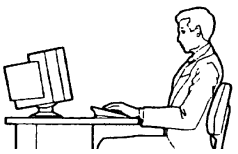
1. Check if the power cord and the cables to other devices are properly connected.
2. See Chapter 8 to find if your problem fits the description. If it does, take the recommended measure for it.
3. Check if the software required for operation of the server is properly installed.

If the server still appears to fail after you have taken the above actions, consult with your sales agent immediately. Take notes on lamp indications of the server and alarm indications on the display unit before consultation, which may provide a significant help to your sale agent.

Advice for Health

The longer you keep using the computer equipment, the more you become tired, which may cause disorders of your body. When you use a computer, observe the following to keep yourself from getting tired:

Good Working Posture



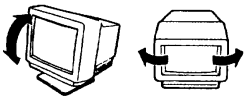
You have good posture if the following are satisfied when you use a computer:

- You sit on a chair with your back straight.
- Your hands are parallel with the floor when you put them on the keyboard.
- You look at the screen slightly lower than your eye height.

You have "good working posture" as described in the above when no part of your body is under excess strain, in other words when your muscles are most relaxed.

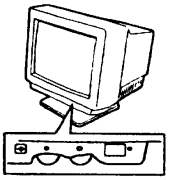
You have "bad posture" when you sit with your back hunched up or you operate a display unit with your face close to the screen. Bad working posture may cause eye strain or poor eyesight.

Adjustment of Display Unit Angles



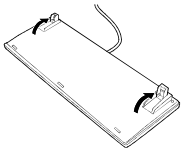
Most display units are designed for adjustment of the horizontal and vertical angles. This adjustment is important to prevent the screen from reflecting bright lights and to make the display contents easy to see. You will not be able to keep "good working posture" and you will feel more tired than you should if you operate a display unit without adjusting horizontal and vertical angles.

Adjustment of Screen Brightness and Contrast

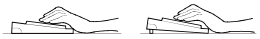


The display unit has brightness and contrast adjustment functions. The most suitable brightness and contrast depend on the individual and the working environment (well-lighted room or insufficient light). Adjust brightness and contrast so that the screen will be easy to see. An extremely bright or dark screen will give a bad effect to your eyes.

Adjustment of Keyboard Angle



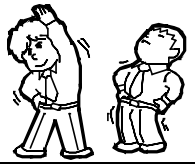
The keyboard provided with the server is designed for adjustment of an angle. Adjust the keyboard angle at which the keyboard is easy to operate. The adjustment assists in reducing strain on your shoulders, arms, and fingers.



Cleaning of Equipment

Clean equipment regularly. It is difficult to see the display contents on a dusty screen. Keeping equipment clean is also important for your sight.

Fatigue and Rest



If you feel tired, you should stop working and do light exercises.

(This page is intentionally left blank.)

Chapter 2

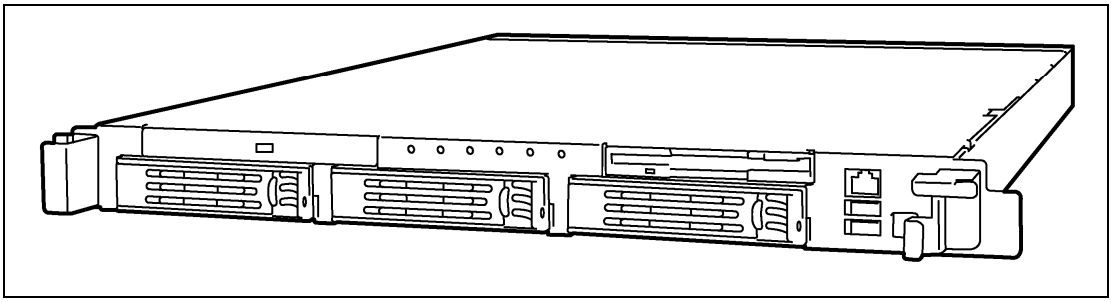
General Description

This chapter provides information that you should be familiar with before using the server. It includes names and functions of the components and features of the server.

OVERVIEW

Your server is a modular, multiprocessing server based on the Intel® Xeon™ microprocessor. It is a solid performer and offers the latest technology. The combination of compute performance, memory capacity, and integrated I/O provides a high performance environment for many server market applications. These range from large corporations supporting remote offices to small companies looking to obtain basic connectivity capability such as file and print services, e-mail, web access, web site server, etc.

Your server is housed and available as a rack-mount system. Your server conveniently installs into a standard EIA 19-inch rack assembly.

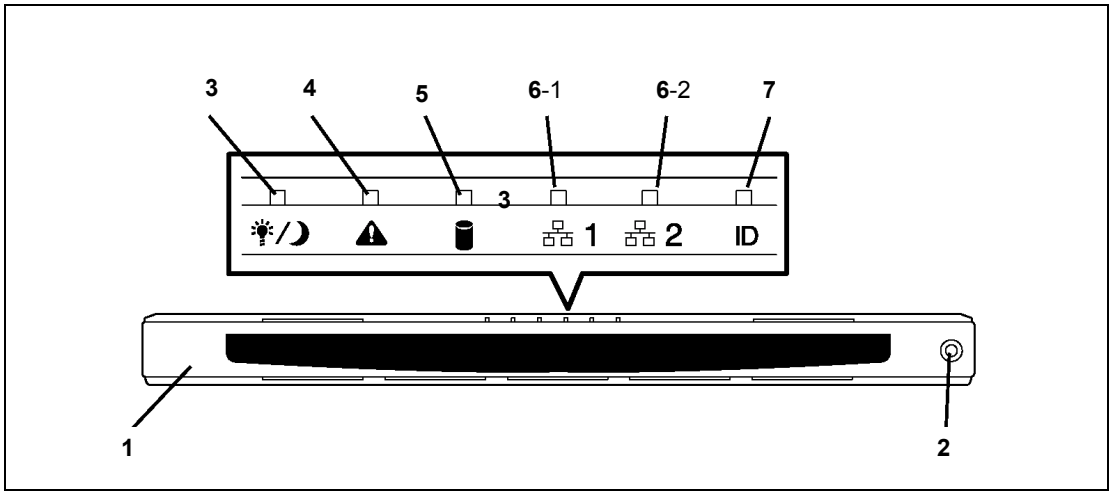


Your server includes a 3.5-inch diskette drive, a CD-ROM drive and three hot-swap SCSI hard disk drive bays. The hot-swap SCSI hard disk drive bays support up to three 1.0-inch SCSI hard disk drives that can be swapped in or out of the system without powering it down, if RAID functionality is configured in the system.

As application requirements increase, you can expand your server with an additional processor, additional memory, add-in boards and peripheral devices: tape devices, CD-ROM, and hard disk drives.

Front View with Front Bezel Closed

The following figure shows the location of the front system features.



1 Front bezel
The front bezel is a cover protecting the front devices during daily operation. A security key is provided to lock the cover.

2 Key slot
Insert the security key into this slot when unlocking the front bezel.

3 POWER lamp (green)
This lamp turns green when the power is turned on.

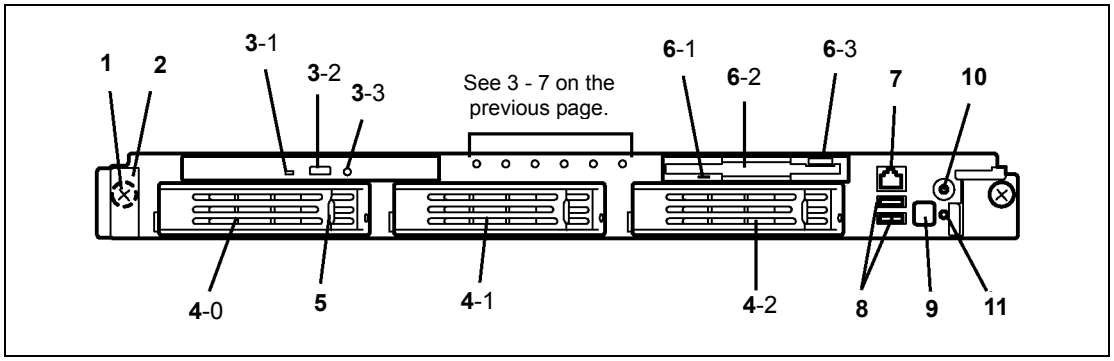
4 STATUS lamp (green/amber) (on the front panel)
This lamp indicates the server status. The lamp is green during normal operation. The lamp turns amber or flashes when the server enters the abnormal state.

5 DISK ACCESS lamp (green/amber)
This lamp is green during access to the internal hard disks. The lamp turns amber when even one of the internal hard disks fails.

6 ACT lamp (green)
This lamp is on while the system is connected to the network. The number "1" on the icon indicates LAN port 1, and the number "2" indicates LAN port 2.

7 UID lamp (blue)
This lamp goes on when the UID switch is pressed. (The lamp also goes on or flashes when software issues a command.)

Front View with Front Bezel Removed



1 Set screws (1 at the right and left each)
The screws secure the server to the rack.

2 Handles (1 at the right and left each)
Hold the handles when dismounting/mounting the server from/in the rack.

3 CD-ROM drive
This drive reads data from the CD-ROM.
3-1 Disk access lamp
3-2 CD tray eject button
3-3 Emergency hole

4 Hard disk bays
Mount hard disks in the bays. Each number following the bold-faced number indicates the SCSI ID. Dummy sponge blocks are mounted in the bays except **4**-1 in the standard configuration.

5 DISK lamp (green/amber)
Hard disk lamp. Each hard disk lamp is green during access to the hard disk. The lamp turns amber when the hard disk fails. The lamp flashes switching back and forth between green and amber during build processing (in only disk array configuration).

6 3.5-inch floppy disk drive
This drive reads/writes data from/to the 3.5-inch floppy disk.
6-1 Disk access lamp
6-2 Disk slot
6-3 Eject button

7 Front serial port 2 connector
Connect device having a serial interface to this connector. The setting of the server needs to be changed depending on the device to be connected. This connector is capped for preventing incorrect connection in the standard status.

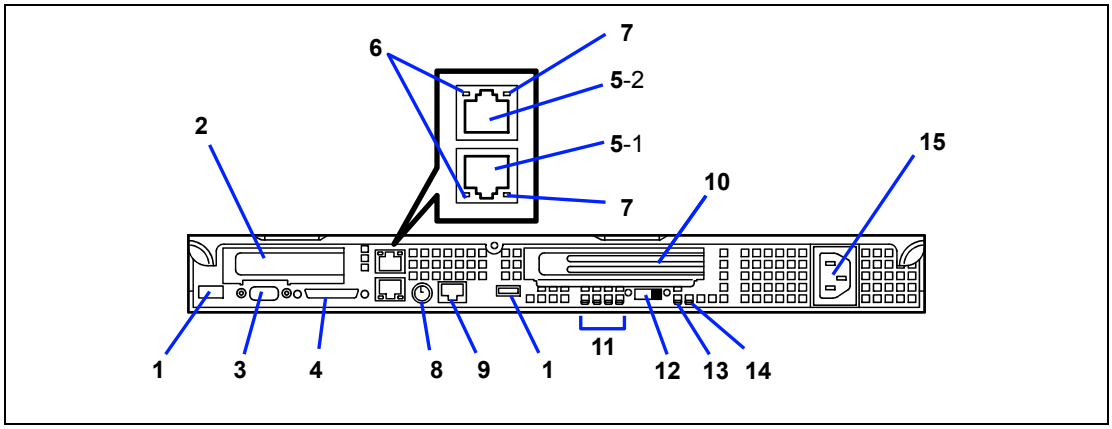
8 USB connectors (2 ports)
Connect device compliant with the USB interface to the connectors.

9 POWER switch
Press this switch to turn on/off the power. Pressing the switch once turns on the power, and the POWER lamp goes on. Pressing it again turns off the power. Keep pressing the switch for 4 seconds or more forcibly turns off the power.

10 UID (Unit ID) switch
Press this switch to turn on/off the UID lamps on the front and rear panels of the server. Pressing the switch once turns on the lamps. Pressing it again turns them off.

11 DUMP switch
Press this switch to dump memory.

Rear View



1 USB connector
Connect device compliant with the USB interface to this connector.

2 Low-profile PCI board extension slot
Mount PCI board of the low-profile type into this slot. The slot number is 1C.

3 Monitor connector
Connect the display unit to this connector.

4 SCSI connector
Connect external SCSI device to this connector.

5 LAN connectors
Connect network systems on the LAN to the connectors.
The number "1" following the bold-faced number indicates LAN port 1, and the number "2" indicates LAN port 2.
The connector in LAN port 1 is hard to remove. Thus, you may use a flat-tip screwdriver to push the catch of the connector. Care should be taken not to damage the LAN port or any other ports with screwdriver.

6 LINK/ACT lamp (green)
This lamp indicates the access status of the LAN.

7 Speed lamp (amber)
This lamp indicates the transmission speed of the LAN.

8 Mouse/keyboard connectors
Connect the mouse and keyboard to the connectors through the provided relay cables.

9 Rear serial port 2 connector
Connect device having a serial interface to this connector. The jumper setting on the mother board needs to be changed depending on the device to be connected. This connector is capped for preventing incorrect connection in the standard status.
A leased line cannot be connected directly to this connector.

10 Full-height PCI board extension slots
Mount PCI board of the full-height type in the slot. The slot number is 1B.

11 POST lamps (on the mother board)
They are on during POST after the power is turned on.

12 Console Redirection switch
This switch enables the console redirection feature via serial port 2.
Move the switch to ON position when using the terminal applications other than NEC MWA (such as Windows Hyper Terminal to connect tiwth the server.

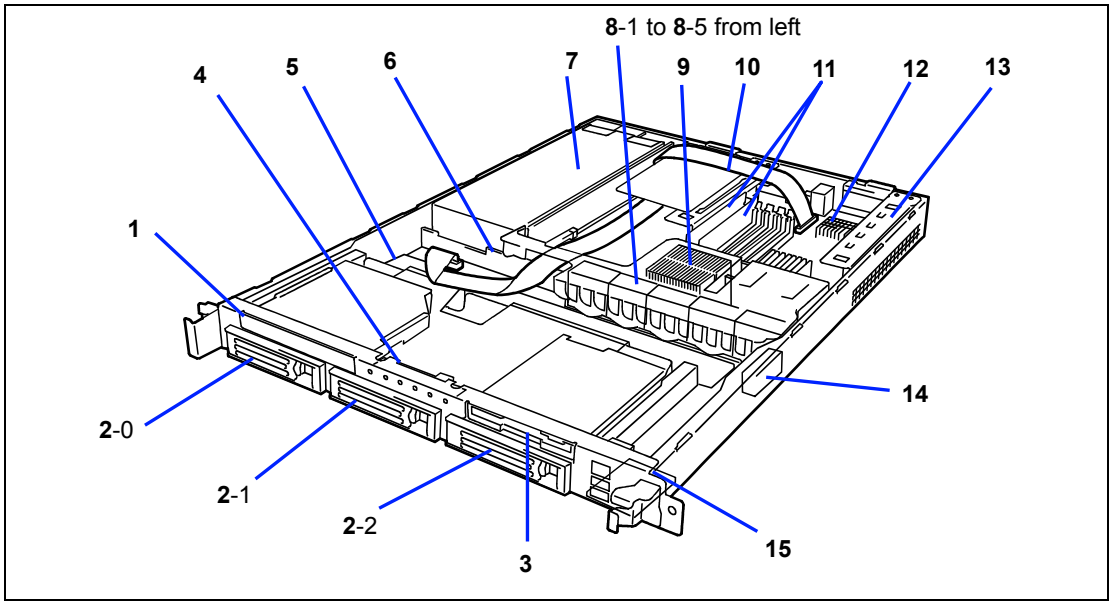
13 STATUS lamp (green/amber) (on the mother board)
This lamp indicates the server status. The lamp is green during normal operation. The lamp turns amber or flashes when the server enters the abnormal state.

14 UID lamp (blue)
This lamp goes on when the UID switch is pressed. (The lamp also goes on when software issues a command.)

15 AC inlet
Connect the power cord to this socket.

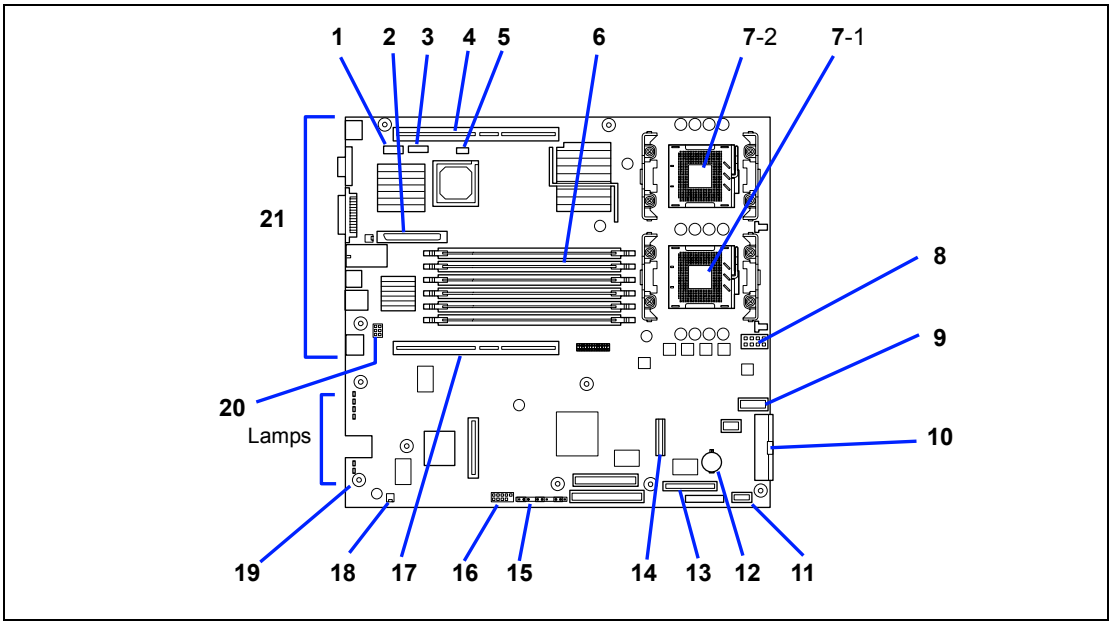
IMPORTANT: The LAN connector of (5) and the serial port 2 connector of (9) have the same shape. Be careful not to connect a cable to a wrong connector.

Internal View



1 **CD-ROM drive**
2 **Disk bays**
(Each number following the bold-faced number indicates the SCSI ID number.)
3 **Floppy disk drive**
4 **Front LED board**
5 **SCSI backplane**
6 **Power jumper board**
7 **Power supply unit**
8 **Cooling fans**
(Each number following the bold-faced number indicates the baseboard fan number.)
9 **Processor (mounted under the CPU and heat sink)**
10 **Riser card B (for full-height boards)**
11 **DIMM (Two DIMMs are mounted as standard in slots #1A and #1B.)**
12 **Mother board**
13 **Riser card C (for only low-profile boards)**
14 **Cover open sensor**
15 **Front panel board**

Mother Board



1 **Rear serial port connector**
2 **Internal SCSI connector** (for relay with internal hard disk)
3 **ICMB connector**
4 **PCI riser card slot C**
(For only low-profile boards. 100 MHz/64-bit, 3.3V, PCI-X)
5 **IPMB connector**
6 **DIMM sockets (for the interleave type)**
(The sockets are called #3A, #3B, #2A, #2B, #1A, and #1B sequentially from top.)
7 **Processor sockets**
7-1 Processor #1 (CPU #1) **7**-2 Processor #2 (CPU #2)
8 **Processor power connector**
9 **System fan connector**
10 **Main power connector**
11 **Power signal connector**
12 **Lithium battery**
13 **Front serial port connector**
14 **FDD/CD-ROM/front panel connector**
15 **Configuration jumper switch**
16 **Front panel USB connector**
17 **PCI riser card slot B**
(For full-height boards. 100 MHz/64-bit, 3.3V, PCI-X)
18 **Hard disk drive access lamp pin header**
(Connect the LED relay cable of an additional SCSI/disk array controller.)
19 **Speaker**
20 **Jumper (J5A2)**
21 **Connectors for external device**

STATUS INDICATORS

This section explains the indication and meanings of the server lamps.

POWER Lamp ( )

The POWER lamp is on (green) while the server power switch is on. It is off while no power is supplied to the server.

The POWER lamp indicates that the server is running in the power-saving mode (sleep mode). If the OS supports the power-saving mode such as Windows 2000, running the command blinks the POWER lamp in green and place the server in the power-saving mode. Press the POWER switch to turn out the POWER lamp and place the server back in the normal mode.

The power-saving mode is only available when the OS supports the power-saving feature. Some OS's allow you to set the server to automatically turn in the power-saving mode when no access is made to the server for a certain period of time or to select the power-saving mode with a command.

STATUS Lamp ( )

The STATUS lamp is on (green) while the server is operating normally. (The rear panel also has the STATUS lamp on it.) If the STATUS lamp is off or turns amber and flashes, it indicates that the server is in abnormal state.

The table below explains the STATUS lamp indication, the meanings, and the procedures.

NOTES:

- If NEC ESMPRO or the offline maintenance utility is installed, you can confirm the cause of a failure by referring to the error log.
- If shutdown processing can be performed through the operating system when you want to restart the system after turning the power off, restart the system by performing shutdown processing. If shutdown processing cannot be performed, restart the system by resetting, forcibly turning the power off, or disconnecting and then connecting the power cord.

STATUS lamp indication	Description	Procedure
On (green)	The server is operating normally.	–
Flashing (green)	• The server is operating with the memory or CPU in degraded state. • A single-bit memory error has often occurred.	Identify the device in degraded state by using the BIOS setup utility "SETUP," and replace it as soon as possible.
Off	The power is off.	–
	POST is in progress.	Wait for a while. The STATUS lamp turns green when POST is completed.
	A CPU error occurred.	Turn the power off and then turn it on. If the POST screen displays an error message, take notes of the message, and contact your sales representative.
	A CPU temperature alarm was detected. (Thermal-Trip)	
	A timeout occurred when the time set for the watchdog timer arrived.	
	A CPU bus error occurred.	
	A memory dump request is made.	Wait until the memory dump is completed.
On (amber)	A temperature alarm was detected.	Check if the internal fans are clean and if the fan units are firmly connected. If the STATUS lamp indication does not change when the fans are normal, contact your sales representative.
	A voltage alarm was detected.	Contact your sales representative.
	The power supply units failed.	
Flashing (amber)	A fan alarm was detected.	Check if the fan units are firmly connected. If the STATUS lamp indication does not change when the fans are normal, contact your sales representative.
	A temperature warning was detected.	Check if the internal fans are clean and if the fan units are firmly connected. If the STATUS lamp indication does not change when the fans are normal, contact your sales representative.

DISK ACCESS Lamp ( )

The DISK ACCESS lamp indicates the status of the hard disk mounted in the 3.5-inch disk bay.

The lamp turns green each time access is made to the hard disk.

When the DISK ACCESS lamp turns amber, it indicates that a hard disk failure has occurred. Check the hard disk lamp for the status of the failing hard disk.

> **IMPORTANT:** If a hard disk in the server is connected to the internal disk array controller (which is additionally mounted), the access lamp signal cable (connected to the connector on the mother board) must be connected from the disk array controller to the mother board.

ACT Lamp ( )

The ACT lamp is green while the server is connected to the LAN. The lamp flashes while the server is accessed via the LAN (during transmission/reception of packets). The number next to the icon indicates the network port number on the rear panel of the server.

UID Lamp (UID)

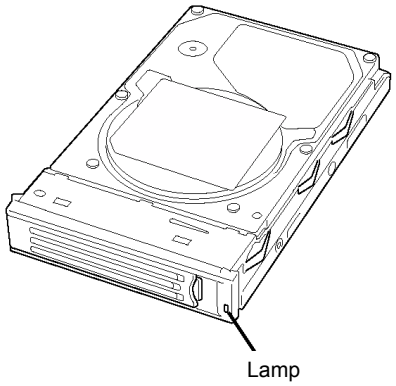
Pressing the UID switch toggles the front panel UID lamp (blue) and the mother board UID lamp on and off. The mother board UID lamp is visible through the rear of the chassis and allows you to locate the server you're working on from the rear of the servers on a rack.

Disk Access Lamp

The disk access lamp of the floppy disk drive or CD-ROM drive is on while the drive is accessed.

Hard Disk Lamp

The disk lamp mounted in the 3.5-inch disk bay indicates the following depending on the status:



- Flashing (green)

  The lamp indicates that the hard disk is accessed.

- On (amber)

  The lamp indicates a failure of a hard disk mounted in disk array configuration.

  NOTE: Even if one of the hard disks fails in disk array configuration (RAID1, RAID5, or RAID0+1), the server can continue operation. However, replace the disk as soon as possible, and perform reconstruction (rebuild) processing. (The failing disk can be replaced in hot swap mode.)

- Flashing switching back and forth between green and amber

  The lamp indicates that reconstruction (rebuild) processing is being performed for the hard disk. (This flashing does not indicate a failure.) When a failing hard disk is replaced in disk array configuration, the system automatically rebuilds the data. (Auto-rebuild function) The lamp switches back and forth between green and amber during rebuild processing.

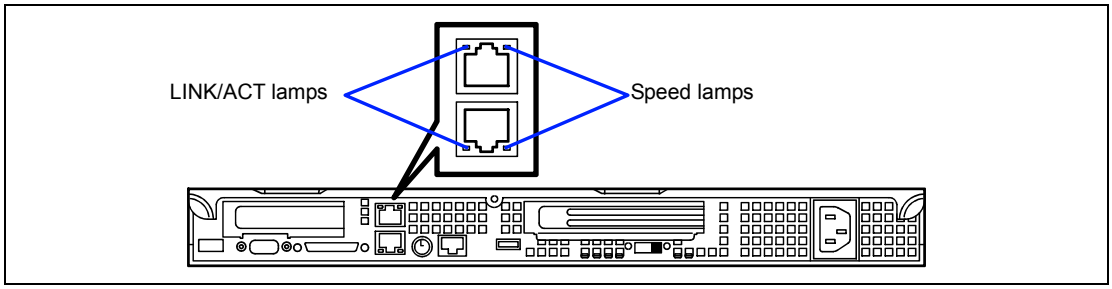
  The lamp goes off when the rebuild processing has terminated. It turns amber when the rebuild processing fails.

IMPORTANT: If the server is turned off during rebuild processing, the processing is stopped. Restart the server, mount the new hard disk in hot swap mode, and then perform rebuild processing again. Observe the following notes on using the auto-rebuild function.

- Do not turn the power off. (Once the power is turned off, the auto-build function does not start.)
- Let 90 seconds or more pass between when dismounting a failing hard disk and when mounting the new one.
- Do not replace a failing hard disk while rebuild processing is being performed for another hard disk.

LAN Connector Lamps

There are two lamps for each of the two LAN ports (connectors) on the rear panel.



- LINK/ACT lamps

  Each LINK/ACT lamp indicates the status of the standard network port of the server. While power is supplied to the server and HUB and the connection is correct, the lamp is on (green). (LINK) The lamp turns green and flashes while the network port is transmitting/receiving data. (ACT)

  If the lamp does not go on when the LINK state is placed, check if the network cable is in normal state and if it is connected correctly. If the lamp does not go on yet when the network cable is normal, the network (LAN) controller may be faulty. In this case, contact your sales representative.

- Speed lamp

  This lamp indicates whether each of the network ports normally equipped with the server is operated through the 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX or 10BASE-T network interface. If the lamp is lit amber, the network port is operated through 1000BASE-T. If the lamp is lit green, the network port is operated through 100BASE-TX. If the lamp is off, the network port is operated through 10BASE-T.

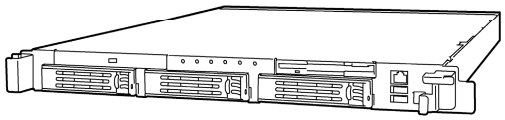
POST Lamp

Four lamps indicating the POST progress are located on the mother board. They are visible through the slits on the rear of the server. If the POST does not complete, the POST screen displays an error message, or you hear the beep sounds frequently, take notes of the message and the beep pattern and contact you service representative.

STANDARD FEATURES

High performance

- Intel® Xeon™ processor
- High-speed network interface (1000Mbps/100Mbps/10Mbps supported)
- High-speed disk access (Ultra320 SCSI)
- High-speed memory access (168-pin, 72-bit ECC registered DDR DIMM (DDR-266 compatible)



High-reliability

- Memory monitoring feature (single-bit error correction/multiple-bit error detection)
- CPU/memory degradation feature (logical isolation of a failed device)
- Memory chip kill
- Bus parity error detection
- Temperature detection
- Error notification
- Internal fan monitoring feature
- Internal voltage monitoring feature
- Auto-rebuild feature (optional, hot-swappable)
- BIOS password feature
- Mechanical security lock

Management Utilities

- NEC ESMPRO
- NEC Management Workstation Application (NEC MWA)

Maintenance Features

- Off-line Maintenance Utility
- Memory dump feature using the DUMP switch

Expandability

- Two 64-bit/100MHz PCI-X (Low profile and Full length)
- Large memory of up to 12 GB
- Three hot-swap SCSI hard disk drive bays
- Up to two multi-processors are available for upgrade.
- USB interface (A USB-support driver is required.)
- Two network ports

Many Available Features

- Graphic accelerator "RAGE XL" support
- El Torito Bootable CD-ROM (no emulation mode) format support
- POWER switch mask
- Software power-off
- Remote power-on feature
- AC-Link feature
- Baseboard Management Controller (BMC)
- Consoleless feature

Self-diagnosis

- Power On Self-Test (POST)
- Test and Diagnosis (T&D)

Easy and Fine Setup

- NEC EXPRESSBUILDER (system setup utility)
- Configuration Parameter Diskette Creator
- SETUP (BIOS setup utility)
- SCSI*Select* (SCSI device utility)

Power Supply

The power supply is rated for 290 watts of power.

The power subsystem supports implementation of remote management features including remote enable that permits power to be activated from a variety of sources.

Peripheral Bays

Your server supports a variety of standard PC AT-compatible peripheral devices. The chassis includes these peripheral bays:

- A 3.5-inch front panel bay for mounting the standard 3.5-inch diskette drive (supports 720 KB and 1.44 MB diskette media)
- A standard CD-ROM drive bay
- Three hot-swap SCSI hard disk drive bays for mounting hard disk drives installed in easily removable drive carriers.

> **NOTE:** The hot-swap SCSI hard disk drive bays contain a hot-swap back plane that require an 80-pin single connector attachment (SCA) connector on the drives that you install.

System Cooling

The chassis includes a fan module with five fans for cooling the processor(s), hard drives, and PCI cards. The fan system is located in the middle of the chassis to pull cooling air through the chassis. The power supply contains two built-in fans for cooling.

SAF-TE LOGIC

> **NOTE:** SAF-TE Logic is in systems that include the hot-swap SCSI disk drive cage. SAF-TE Logic is not available in systems that include the standard SCSI disk drive cage.

The SCSI backplane includes SAF-TE (SCSI Accessed Fault Tolerant Enclosure) logic that provides an interface to the disk subsystem that supports status signals, hot swapping drives, and enclosure monitoring.

The transport mechanism for the standardized alert detection and status reporting is the SCSI bus. Disk drives, power supplies, cooling fans, and temperature are continually monitored and the conditions then reported over the SCSI bus to the system. When used with RAID management software the user can be alerted of impending or imminent disk conditions requiring attention. This allows the user to react to conditions that could normally go unnoticed until data loss.

SYSTEM BOARD FEATURES

The following subsections describe the system board major components.

Processor

The system board accommodates one or two Intel Xeon processors with 512k cache in the INT3/FC-mPGA2 package. This processor uses the .13 micron technology and offers advanced performance. The processor external interface operates at a maximum of 533 MHz.

Memory

The system board contains six 168-pin DIMM slots each supporting 72-bit ECC (64-bit main memory plus ECC) registered SDRAM DIMMs (DDR-266 compatible). Memory is two-way interleaved and partitioned in three banks. You may install a minimum of 512 MB (256MB × 2) and as much as 12 GB.

The controller automatically detects, sizes, and initializes the memory array, depending on the type, size, and speed of the installed DIMMs, and reports memory size and allocation to the server via configuration registers.

> **NOTE:** Use DIMMs that have been tested for compatibility with the server board.
> Contact your sales representative or dealer for a current list of approved memory modules.

PCI Riser Slots

The mother board has two PCI riser slots. Riser B provides the following features:

- Bus speed up to 100 MHz
- 184 pin, 5 volt keyed, 64-bit expansion slot connector
- Support for a 1-slot PCI riser card
- Support for both full length and low profile PCI cards

Riser C provides the following features:

- Bus speed up to 100MHz
- 184 pin, 5 volt keyed, 64-bit expansion slot connector
- Support for a 1-slot PCI riser card
- Support for only low profile PCI cards

Video

The mother board uses an ATI RAGE XL PCI graphics accelerator with 8 MB of video SDRAM that supports all standard IBM VGA modes. The embedded SVGA video subsystem supports:

- Pixel resolutions up to 1600 x 1200 under 2D and 1024 x 768 under 3D
- CRT and LCD monitors up to 100 Hz vertical refresh rate

The mother board supports disabling of the onboard video through the BIOS setup menu or when a plug in video card is installed in any of the PCI slots.

SCSI Controller

The SCSI version of the server board includes an embedded Adaptec AIC-7902 controller providing dual Ultra320 Low Voltage Differential (LVD) SCSI channels.

The SCSI bus is terminated on the server board with active terminators that cannot be disabled. The onboard device must always be at one end of the bus. The device at the other end of the cable must also be terminated. LVD devices generally do not have termination built-in and need to have a termination source provided. Non-LVDs devices generally are terminated through a jumper or resistor pack on the device itself.

Network Controller

NOTE: To ensure EMC product regulation compliance, the system must be used with a shielded LAN cable.

The mother board uses two Intel® 82546EB Fast Ethernet Controllers and supports 10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T network subsystems.

The 82546 EB controller supports the following features:

- 64-bit, 100 MHz PCI-X interface
- Integrated IEEE 802.3 10Base-T, 100Base-TX, and 1000Base-T compatible PHY
- IEEE 820.3u auto-negotiation support
- Chained memory structure similar to the 82559, 82558, 82557 and 82596
- Full duplex support at both 10 Mbps, 100 Mbps, and 1000 Mbps operation
- Low power +3.3 V device

On the system board, NIC 1 can be used as both a network interface and server management interface.

Keyboard and Mouse

The keyboard/mouse controller is PS/2-compatible. A Y-cable can be used if both a PS/2 mouse and keyboard are required at the same time.

RJ-45 Serial Port

The front rear RJ-45 serial ports are a fully functional COM port that support any standard serial device and provide support for serial concentrators. For server applications that use a serial concentrator to access the server management features of the mother board, a standard 8-pin CAT-5 cable from the serial concentrator is plugged directly into the RJ-45 serial port. The 8 pins of the RJ-45 connector can be configured to match either of two pin-out standards used by serial port concentrators.

To accommodate either standard, the J5A2 jumper block located directly behind the RJ-45 serial port must be jumpered appropriately according to the desired standard.

See Chapter 3 for detail explanation.

ACPI

The mother board supports the Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) as defined by the ACPI 2.0 specifications. An ACPI aware operating system can put the system into a state where the hard drives spin down, the system fans stop, and all processing is halted. However, the power supply will still be on and the processors will still be dissipating some power, so the power supply fans will still run.

The mother board supports sleep states s0, s1, s4, and s5:

- s0: Normal running state.
- s1: Processor sleep state. No context will be lost in this state and the processor caches will maintain coherency.
- s4: Hibernate or Save to Disk: The memory and machine state are saved to disk. Pressing the power button or other wakeup event will restore the system state from the disk and resume normal operation. This assumes that no hardware changes have been made to the system while it was off.
- s5: Soft off: Only the RTC section of the CSB and the BMC are running in this state. No context is saved by the OS or hardware.

> **IMPORTANT:** The system is off only when the AC power cord is disconnected.

System Board Management Controller (BMC)

Server management is concentrated in the System Board Management Controller (BMC). The BMC and associated circuitry are powered from a 5Vdc standby voltage, which remains active when system power is switched off, but the ac power source is still on and connected.

The BMC supports the NEC Management Workstation Application (NEC MWA), which allows remote server management via a modem or direct connection to a manager system. Events monitored by the manager system include over-temperature and over-voltage conditions, fan failure, or chassis intrusion.

Information on NEC MWA may be found on the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM included with your server.

One major function of the BMC is to autonomously monitor system management events, and log their occurrence in the nonvolatile System Event Log (SEL). The events being monitored include overtemperature and overvoltage conditions, fan failure, or chassis intrusion. To enable accurate monitoring, the BMC maintains the nonvolatile Sensor Data Record (SDR), from which sensor information can be retrieved. The BMC provides an ISA host interface to SDR sensor information, so that software running on the server can poll and retrieve the server's current status.

The BMC performs the following:

- Monitors server board temperature and voltage
- Monitors processor presence and controls Fault Resilient Boot (FRB)
- Detects and indicates baseboard fan failure
- Manages the SEL interface
- Manages the SDR Repository interface
- Monitors the SDR/SEL timestamp clock
- Monitors the system management watchdog timer
- Monitors the periodic SMI timer
- Monitors the event receiver
- Controls secure mode, including video blanking, diskette write-protect monitoring, and front panel lock/unlock initiation
- Controls Wake On LAN via Magic Packet support.

DEGRADATION FEATURE

The degradation feature automatically isolates a failed DIMM or processor to assure continuous operation of the server when the POST (Power On Self-Test, self-diagnosis program after power on) detects such a DIMM or processor.

> **NOTE:** The degradation feature is only available when at least two DIMMs or processors are installed.

Failed DIMMs and processors may be identified on the screen that the POST displays, or with the BIOS setup utility of the server, "SETUP." They may also be identified on the system that has the NEC ESMPRO installed.

REMOTE POWER-ON FEATURE (WAKE ON LAN)

The remote power-on function turns on the server through a network. It sends a special packet from the management computer to a remote server to turn it on if the server is off-powered.

To enable this feature, you must select "Enabled" for "Wake On LAN/PME PCI-XB" in the Advanced Chipset Control of the Advanced menu of the BIOS setup utility, "SETUP." (See Chapter 4.)

The remote power-on feature is not available in the following cases. Press the POWER switch once to start the OS, and turn off the server in an appropriate procedure.

- Abnormal previous system shut-down
- No power supply to the server (due to turned-off breaker, disconnected power cord, power blackout, etc.)

AC-LINK FEATURE

When the power cord of the server is connected to an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) unit, the server supports the power linkage feature that enables control over the power supply from the UPS to the server. The AC-Link feature can be enabled or disabled with the Server menu of the BIOS setup utility, "SETUP." (See Chapter 4.)

SYSTEM SECURITY

To help prevent unauthorized entry or use of the system, the system includes a full lockable front bezel and Server Management software that monitors the front bezel intrusion switch.

Security with Mechanical Locks and Monitoring

To unlock the bezel, insert the key in the lock and turn the lock counterclockwise until it stops (about a quarter turn). The bezel is now unlocked and can be opened again.

To lock the bezel, insert the key in the lock. Turn the lock clockwise until it stops (about a quarter turn). The bezel is now locked and cannot be opened.

Software Locks via the BIOS Setup Utility

The BIOS Setup Utility provides a number of security features to prevent unauthorized or accidental access to the system. Once the security measures are enabled, you can access the system only after you enter the correct password(s). For example:

- Enable the keyboard lockout timer so that the server requires a password to reactivate the keyboard and mouse after a specified time out period – 1 to 120 minutes.
- Set and enable a supervisor password.
- Set and enable a user password.
- Set secure mode to prevent keyboard or mouse input and to prevent use of the front panel reset and power switches.
- Activate a hot key combination to enter secure mode quickly.
- Disable writing to the diskette drive when secure mode is set.
- Disable access to the boot sector of the operating system hard disk drive.

Using Passwords

You can set either the user password, the supervisor password, or both passwords. If only the user password is set, you:

- Must enter the user password to enter BIOS Setup.
- Must enter the user password to boot the server if Password on Boot is enabled in the BIOS Setup.
- Must enter the user password to exit secure mode.

If only the supervisor password is set, you:

- Must enter the supervisor password to enter BIOS Setup.
- Must enter the supervisor password to boot the server if Password on Boot is enabled in the BIOS Setup.
- Must enter the supervisor password to exit secure mode.

If both passwords are set, you:

- May enter the user password to enter BIOS Setup. However, you will not be able to change many of the options.
- Must enter the supervisor password if you want to enter BIOS Setup and have access to all of the options.
- May enter either password to boot the server if Password on Boot is enabled in the BIOS Setup.
- May enter either password to exit secure mode.

Secure Mode

Configure and enable the secure boot mode by using the BIOS Setup. When secure mode is in effect:

- You can boot the server and the operating system will run, but you must enter the user password to use the keyboard or mouse.
- You cannot turn off system power or reset the server from the front panel switches.

Secure mode has no effect on functions enabled via remote server management or power control via the watchdog timer.

Taking the server out of secure mode does not change the state of system power. That is, if you press and release the power switch while secure mode is in effect, the system will not be powered off when secure mode is later removed. However, if the front panel power switch remains depressed when secure mode is removed, the server will be powered off.

Summary of Software Security Features

The table below lists the software security features and describes what protection each offers. In general, to enable or set the features listed here, you must run the BIOS Setup and go to the Security Subsystem Group, menu. The table also refers to the Setup utility.

Software Security Features

Feature	Description
Secure mode	How to enter secure mode: • Setting and enabling passwords automatically places the system in secure mode. • If you set a hot-key combination (through Setup), you can secure the system simply by pressing the key combination. This means you do not have to wait for the inactivity time-out period. When the system is in secure mode: The server can boot and run the operating system, but mouse and keyboard input is not accepted until the user password is entered. At boot time, if a CD is detected in the CD-ROM drive or a diskette in drive A, the system prompts for a password. When the password is entered, the server boots from CD or diskette and disables the secure mode. If there is no CD in the CD-ROM drive or diskette in drive A, the server boots from drive C and automatically goes into secure mode. All enabled secure mode features go into effect at boot time. To leave secure mode: Enter the correct password(s).
Disable writing to diskette	In secure mode, the server will not boot from or write to a diskette unless a password is entered. To write protect access to diskette whether the server is in secure mode or not, use the Setup main menu, Floppy Options, and specify Floppy Access as read only.
Set a time out period so that keyboard and mouse input are not accepted. Also, screen can be blanked, and writes to diskette can be inhibited	Specify and enable an inactivity time out period of from 1 to 120 minutes. If no keyboard or mouse action occurs for the specified period, attempted keyboard and mouse input will not be accepted. The monitor display will go blank, and the diskette drive will be write protected (if these security features are enabled through Setup). To resume activity: Enter the correct password(s).
Control access to using the BIOS Setup: set supervisor password	To control access to setting or changing the system configuration, set a supervisor password and enable it through Setup. If both the supervisor and user passwords are enabled, either can be used to boot the server or enable the keyboard and/or mouse, but only the supervisor password will allow Setup to be changed. To disable a password, change it to a blank entry or press CTRL-D in the Change Password menu of the Supervisor Password Option menu found in the Security Subsystem Group. To clear the password if you cannot access Setup, change the Clear Password jumper (see Chapter 4).

Feature	Description
Control access to the system other than BIOS Setup: set user password	To control access to using the system, set a user password and enable it through Setup. To disable a password, change it to a blank entry or press CTRL-D in the Change Password menu of the User Password Option menu found in the Security Subsystem Group. To clear the password if you cannot access Setup, change the Clear Password jumper (see Chapter 4).
Boot without keyboard	The system can boot with or without a keyboard. During POST, before the system completes the boot sequence, the BIOS automatically detects and tests the keyboard if it is present and displays a message.
Specify the boot sequence	The sequence that you specify in setup will determine the boot order. If secure mode is enabled (a user password is set), then you will be prompted for a password before the server fully boots. If secure mode is enabled and the “Secure Boot Mode” option is also enabled, the server will fully boot but will require a password before accepting any keyboard or mouse input.

NEC EXPRESSBUILDER

The CD-ROM that comes with the server contains a setup utility called "NEC EXPRESSBUILDER." When you have first installed the server or append features to the server, use the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER to set up your server.

Refer to Chapter 6 for details.

IMPORTANT: Do not use the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for any other computers than the server, nor other NEC Express5800 series servers than the one that NEC EXPRESSBUILDER is provided for. Not following this instruction may cause failures.

The major functions of the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER are:

- To install the OS.
  It installs an operating system.
- To diagnose the system.
  It diagnoses the server.
- To create a support disk.
  It copies utilities in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into a floppy disk to launch them from the floppy disk.
- To update the BIOS and firmware
  It updates the BIOS features and firmware program of the server.
- To update the Windows System*
  It updates the several resources of Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Windows 2000.
- To install the utilities
  It install the management utilities of NEC ESMPRO and NEC MWA.
- To read the online documents*
  It opens the online document files (".pdf" files).

  * These functions are available under Windows system.

NOTE: Some features among those listed above can be used from the remote computer via cross cable, modem, or LAN (consoleless feature). See Chapter 6 for details.

NEC ESMPRO

The NEC ESMPRO is server management software that runs on the OS. The NEC ESMPRO includes the NEC ESMPRO Manager for the server monitoring terminal and the NEC ESMPRO Agent for the server.

> **NOTE:** For details of major functions of the NEC ESMPRO, system configuration and setups with the NEC ESMPRO, see Chapter 6. Available functions of the NEC ESMPRO depend on the OS you install. Ask your sales agent for details.

OFF-LINE MAINTENANCE UTILITY

The Off-line Maintenance Utility is used for proactive maintenance and fault analysis of the server. Normally this utility is used by the maintenance engineer.

Refer to Chapter 8 for details.

SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC UTILITY

The system diagnostic utility contained in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER is useful to prevent the hardware failures. See Chapter 7 for details.

NEC MANAGEMENT WORKSTATION APPLICATION (NEC MWA)

The NEC Management Workstation Application (NEC MWA) is an application program for remote management of the server from a system management computer (a computer with the NEC ESMPRO Manager running) through a network.

See Chapter 6 or online document in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

USING YOUR SERVER

This section describes basic operations of the server including how to use devices such as the floppy disk drive and the CD-ROM drive. See Appendix B for notes on using the floppy disk, CD-ROM, and accessories including the keyboard and the mouse.

Front Bezel

Remove the front bezel to power on/off the server, to access the floppy disk drive and CD-ROM drive, and to install/remove hard disks to the 3.5-inch disk bays.

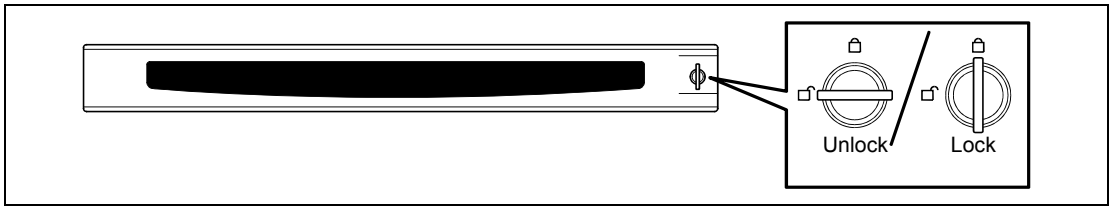
> **IMPORTANT:** To open the front door, you must unlock the door with the provided security key.

Installing or Removing the Front Bezel

When turning the power of the server on/off, accessing to the floppy disk drive or CD-ROM drive, or installing or removing a hard disk on or from the 3.5-inch disk bay, first remove the front bezel.

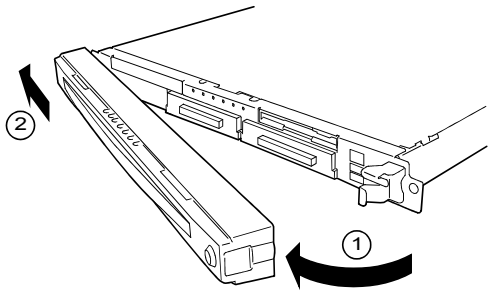
> **IMPORTANT:** The front bezel can be opened only when you unlock it by using the attached security key.

1. Insert the attached security key into the key slot and turn the key to the front bezel side with it pressed lightly to release the lock.

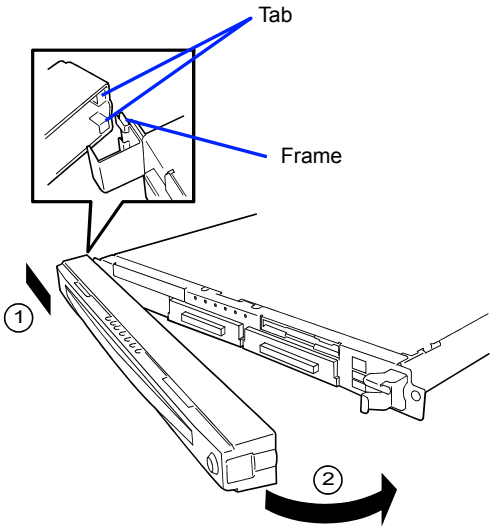


2. Hold the right end of the front bezel lightly to pull it toward you.

3. Slide the front bezel to the left a little to remove the tab from the frame and then remove the front bezel from the server.



To install the front bezel, latch the tab at the left side of the front bezel on the server frame. After the installation, lock the front bezel by using the key for security.



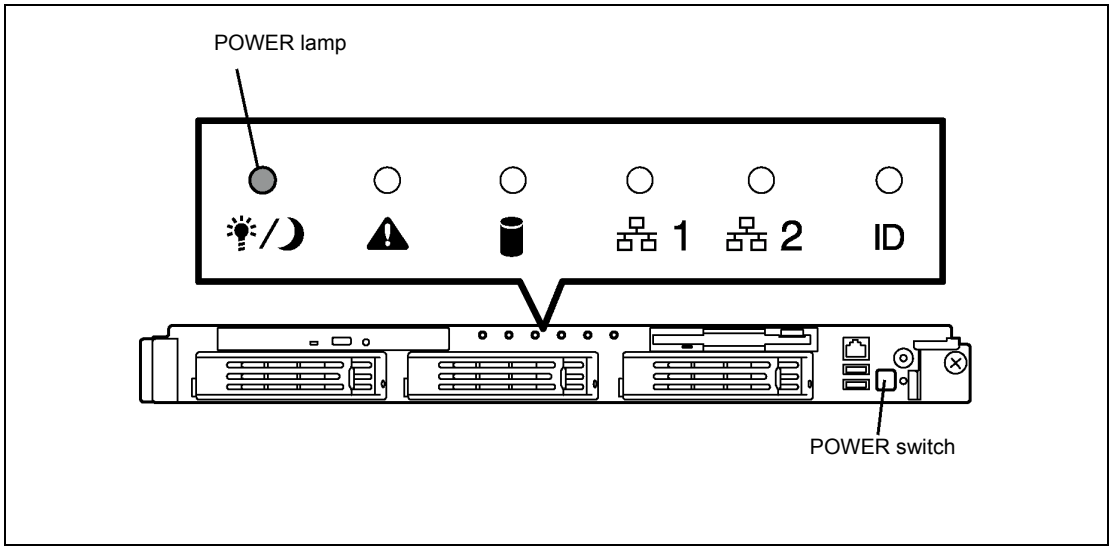
POWER Switch

Use the POWER switch to turn on/off the server.

Power On

Press the POWER switch on the front of the computer chassis.

The POWER lamp lights in green.



IMPORTANT:

- If the power cord is connected to a power control device such as a UPS (Uninterruptive Power Supply), make sure that the power control device is powered.
- If the power cord is connected to the server, an initial diagnosis of the hardware starts. The POWER switch does not work while in diagnosis. Wait for about 10 seconds, then press the POWER switch.
- Do not turn off the server until characters following the "NEC" logo appears on the screen.

POST

POST (Power On Self-Test) is the server's self-diagnostic program stored in the system memory.

When you power on the server, the system automatically runs POST to check the mother board, ECC memory module, CPU module, keyboard, and mouse. POST also displays messages of the BIOS SETUP utility, such as the start-up message, while in progress.

With the factory setup of the server, the NEC logo appears on the display unit while POST is in progress. (To display the POST check results, press **Esc**.)

> **NOTE:** You can set the POST check results to appear on the display unit without pressing **Esc**. To do so, select "Enabled" for "Boot-time Diagnostic Screen" under the Advanced menu of the BIOS SETUP utility.

You don't always need to check the POST check results. Check messages that POST displays when:

- you use the server for the first time.
- the server appears to fail.
- the server beeps for many times between power-on and OS start-up.
- an error message appears on the display unit.

POST Execution Flow

The following describes the progress of POST in the chronological order.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not make key entries or perform mouse operations while POST is in progress.
- Some system configurations may display the message "Press Any Key" to prompt a key entry. This message is driven by BIOS of an installed optional board. Make sure to read the manual that comes with the optional board before any key entry.
- Powering on the server, after you installed or removed an optional PCI board or moved it to another slot, may display the massage that indicates incorrect board configuration and suspend POST. In such a case, press **F1** to continue POST. Board configuration can be made using the utility described later.

1. After a few seconds from power-on, POST starts checking the memory. The count message of the basic and expansion memory appears at top left on the display unit screen. The memory check may takes a few minutes to complete depending on the memory size of the NEC Express server. Also, it may take approximately one minute for the screen display to appear after rebooting the server.
2. Some messages appear upon completion of the memory check. These messages appear to indicate that the system has detected the CPU, keyboard, and mouse.
3. After a few seconds, POST displays the following message prompting you to launch the BIOS setup utility, SETUP, stored in the system memory of the server. This message appears at bottom left on the screen.

   ```
   Press <F2> to enter SETUP, Press <F12> to Network
   ```

   Launch the BIOS SETUP utility when you need to change the settings to meet the requirements for the server. As long as the above message is not displayed with an error message, you don't have to launch the utility. (Ignore the message. POST will automatically proceed.)

   To launch the SETUP utility, press **F2** while the above message is displayed. See Chapter 4 for setup and parameters.

   The server automatically restarts POST all over again when you exit the SETUP utility.

   Press **F12** to start the operating system from the network drive.

4. POST then detects the internal SCSI controller and display the massage prompting you to launch the SCSI device utility. (Ignore the message. POST will automatically proceed a few seconds later.)

   ```
   Press <Ctrl> <A> for SCSISelect(TM) Utility!
   ```

   To launch the SCSI device utility, press **Ctrl** and **A**. See Chapter 4 for setup and parameters.

   You need to use the SCSI device utility when:

   – you connected an external SCSI device.

   – you changed internal SCSI device connections of the server.

   The server automatically restarts POST all over again when you exit the SCSI device utility.

   If more than one SCSI controller board is installed on the PCI bus of the server, the system detects the boot devices in order of the PCI riser card slot 1C (for low-profile boards), and then the PCI riser card slot 1B (for full-height boards), and displays the message indicating activation of the SCSI BIOS SETUP utility.

5. POST displays SCSI ID numbers used by the connected SCSI devices on the screen.

6. If an optional disk array controller is installed, the system displays the message prompting you to activate the disk array BIOS SETUP utility. (The start message and operation may vary depending on the mounted board.)

   For details, see the manual provided with the board or the online document in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM provided with the server.

7. If you set a password using the BIOS setup utility, SETUP, the password entry screen appears upon successful completion of POST.

   Up to three password entries will be accepted. Three incorrect password entries disable the server to boot. In such a case, turn off the power and wait about ten seconds before turning on to boot the server.

   IMPORTANT: Do not set a password before installing an OS.

8. The OS starts when POST completes.

POST Error Messages

When POST detects an error, it displays an error message on the display unit screen. See Chapter 8 for POST error codes.

> **IMPORTANT:** Take a note on the messages displayed before consulting with your sales agent. Alarm messages are useful information for maintenance.

Power Off

Follow the procedure below to power off the server. If the power cord of the server is connected to a UPS, refer to the manual that comes with the UPS or the manual for the application that controls the UPS.

> **IMPORTANT:** Always allow POST to complete before turning off the server.

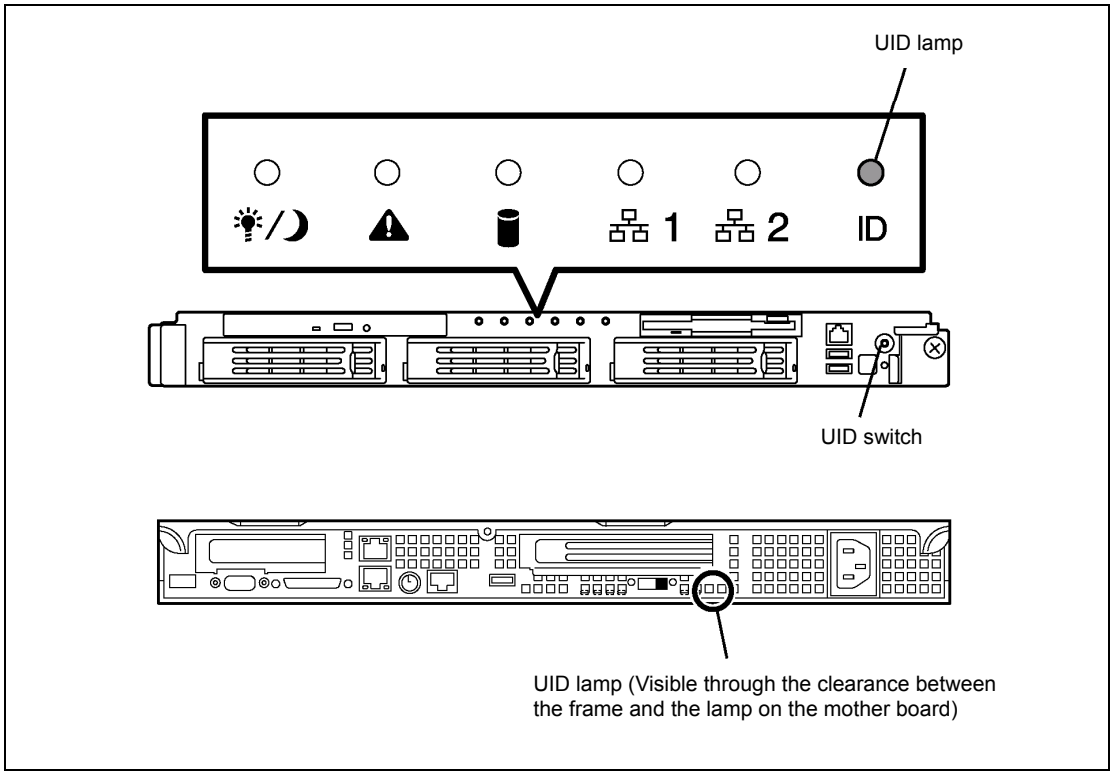
1. Shut down the OS.
2. Press the POWER switch on the front of the server.
   The POWER lamp goes off.
3. Power off peripheral devices.

Identification of Servers ~ UID Switch ~

An "UID (Unit ID) lamp" is provided on the front panel and rear panel. If more than one server is mounted in a single rack, the lamp identifies the server you are going to maintain.

The UID lamp goes on when the UID (Unit ID) switch on the front panel is pressed. It goes off when the switch is pressed again.

Maintenance from the rear of the rack has to be carried out in a dark, narrow space. The interface cable of a server or power supply unit in normal state may be disconnected by accident in this situation. To prevent this problem, you should start maintenance after confirming the target server by using the UID switch.



Floppy Disk Drive

The server is provided with the 3.5-inch floppy disk drive on its front to write/read data to/from a floppy disk.

The server supports the following 3.5-inch floppy disks:

- 2HD floppy disk (double-sided high-density track type)
  Stores data of 1.44MB.
- 2DD floppy disk (double-sided double-density track type)
  Store data of 720KB.

Make sure that the server is powered (the POWER lamp is lit) before inserting a floppy disk into the floppy disk drive.

When you completely insert the floppy disk into the floppy disk drive, the drive clicks and the eject button on the floppy disk is slightly pushed out.

NOTES:

- When an unformatted floppy disk is inserted, the message notifying that date read is not available and the message prompting formatting are displayed. Refer to the manual that comes with the OS to format the floppy disk.
- If the floppy disk contains a system, powering on or restarting the server with the floppy disk inserted boots the system from the floppy disk.

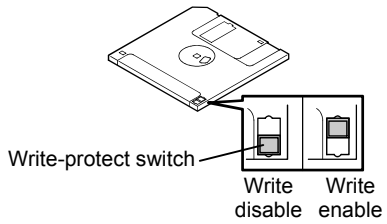
To eject the floppy disk from the floppy disk drive, press the eject button.

NOTE: Make sure that the floppy disk access lamp is unlit before ejecting the floppy disk. Ejecting the disk when the access lamp is lit may destroy the disk data.

NOTE: Use of the floppy disk

The floppy disk is an important data storage media with delicate structure and requires care. Keep the following notes in mind to use it:

- Insert the floppy disk into the floppy disk drive gently as far as it goes.
- Attach the label to the correct position.
- Do not write anything directly onto the disk surface with a pencil or ball-point pen.
- Do not open the shutter.
- Do not use the floppy disk in a dusty place.
- Do not place anything on the floppy disk.
- Do not leave the floppy disk in a high-temperature place (e.g., place exposed to direct sunlight or close to a heater).
- Keep the floppy disk away from cigarette smoke.
- Keep the floppy disk away from any liquid (e.g., water) and chemicals.
- Keep the floppy disk away from any magnetic objects (e.g., magnet).
- Do not pinch the floppy disk with a paper clip or drop it.
- Keep the floppy disk in a floppy disk case that protects it from magnetism and dust.
- A floppy disk has a write-protect switch that prevents the stored data from accidental erasure. You can read data from a write-protected floppy disk, but you cannot save data into the floppy disk or format it. NEC recommends that you should write-protect any floppy disk containing valuable data unless you are about to save data. To write-protect a 3.5-inch floppy disk, use the write-protect switch provided on its back.



- The floppy disk is a very delicate storage media. Dust or thermal changes, as well as operator's misconduct or sever failures, may cause loss of data. To avoid loss of data, NEC recommends that you should make a back-up copy of your valuable data on a regular basis. (Make sure to make a back-up copy of every floppy disk provided with the server.)

CD-ROM Drive

The server is provided with the CD-ROM drive on its front to read data from a CD-ROM (read-only compact disk). The CD-ROM provides larger and faster data read than the floppy disk.

⚠ CAUTION

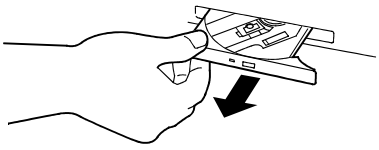
Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may cause a fire, personal injury, or property damage. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not leave the tray ejected from the CD-ROM drive.

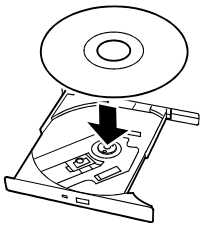
Set a CD-ROM on the CD-ROM drive in the following procedure.

1. Confirm that the power of the server is on (with the POWER lamp being lit in green) before setting the CD-ROM on the CD-ROM drive.
2. Press the Eject button on the front of the CD-ROM drive.

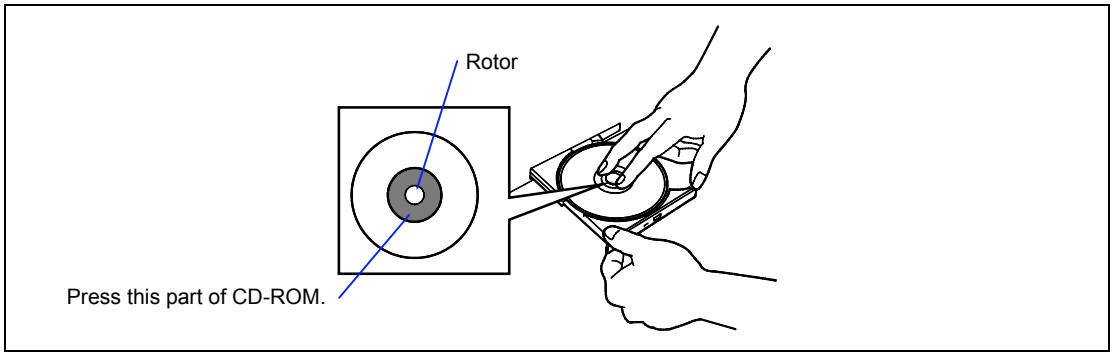
   The tray comes out a little.
3. Hold the tray lightly and pull it out toward you until the tray stops.



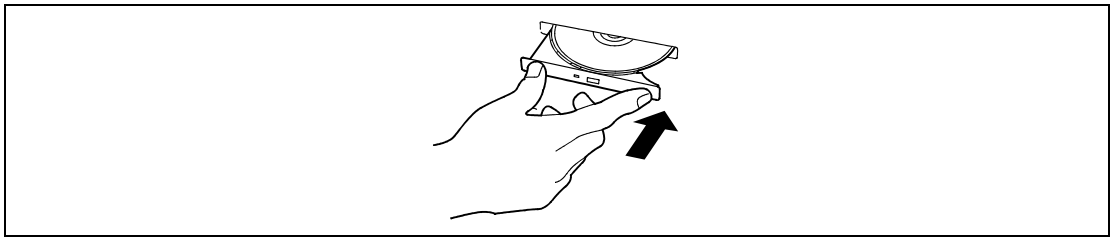
4. Put the CD-ROM on the tray carefully and securely with the character printed surface facing upward.



5. As shown in the figure below, hold the tray with a hand and press the CD-ROM with fingers of another hand to make the hole of the CD-ROM fit to the rotor at the center of the tray.

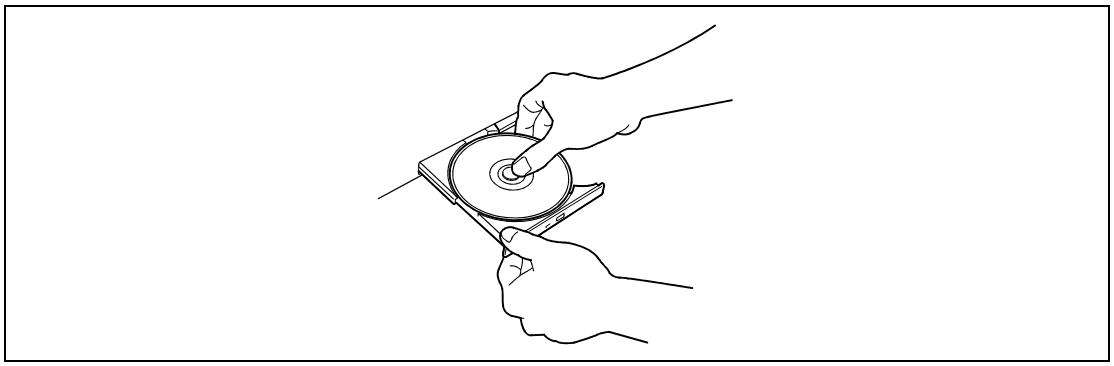


6. Push the front of the tray lightly to retract it into the drive.



IMPORTANT: If a noisy sound in driving the CD-ROM drive occurs after setting a CD-ROM, set it again correctly.

To take out the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive, press the Eject button in the similar way in setting the CD-ROM to make the tray go out.

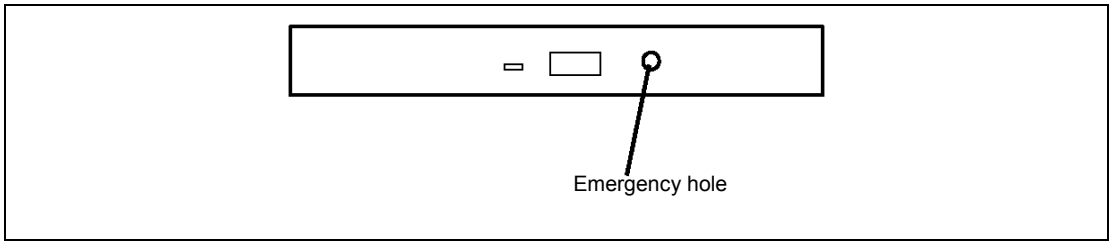


If the access lamp is lit in orange, the CD is being accessed. Confirm that the access lamp is not lit before pressing the Eject button.

As shown in the figure below, hold the tray with a hand and take the end of the CD-ROM lightly by the fingers of another hand with the suppression of the rotor at the center of the tray to remove the CD-ROM from the tray.

After taking out the CD-ROM, return the tray into the drive.

When you fail to eject the CD-ROM tray with the Eject button and take out the CD-ROM from the server, follow the procedure below.



1. Press the POWER switch to power off the server. (The POWER lamp goes off.)
2. Insert a metal pin of approximately 1.2 mm in diameter and 100 mm in length (a straightened large paper clip will make a substitute) into the emergency hole on the right front of the CD-ROM drive and gently push it in until the tray is ejected.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not use a toothpick or plastic stick that is easy to break.
- If the above procedure does not let you take out the CD-ROM, contact your sales agent.

3. Hold the tray and pull it out.
4. Take out the CD-ROM.
5. Push the tray back into position.

NOTE: Use of the CD-ROM

Keep the following notes in mind to use the CD-ROM for the server:

- For the disk which does not conform to the CD standard, the playback of such a disk with the CD drive is not guaranteed.
- Do not drop the CD-ROM.
- Do not place anything on the CD-ROM or bend the CD-ROM.
- Do not attach any label onto the CD-ROM.
- Do not touch the signal side (nothing is printed on this side) with your hand.
- Place the CD-ROM with its printed side upward and gently put it on the tray.
- Do not scratch the CD-ROM or write anything directly on it with a pencil or ball-point pen.
- Keep the CD-ROM away from cigarette smoke.
- Do not leave the CD-ROM in a high-temperature place (e.g., place exposed to direct sunlight or close to a heater).
- When dust or fingerprints are attached on the CD-ROM, wipe the CD-ROM from its center to edge with a dry soft cloth slowly and gently.
- Use the CD cleaner to clean the CD-ROM. Do not use record spray/cleaner, benzene, or thinner.
- Keep the CD-ROM in a CD-ROM case when not in use.
- If the CD-ROM emits large noise in the CD-ROM drive, remove the CD-ROM and insert it back again.

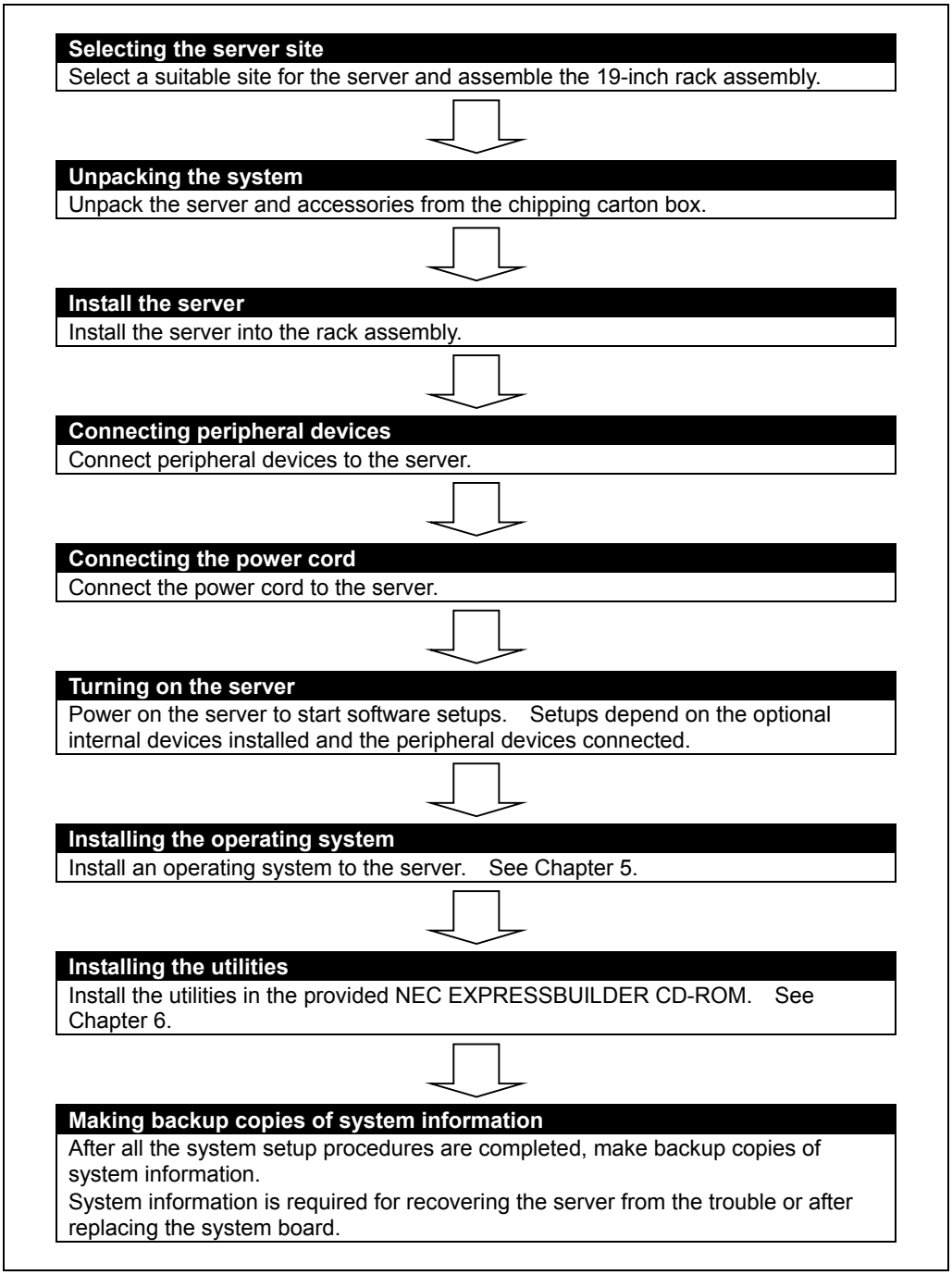
Chapter 3

Setting Up Your Server

This chapter describes how to set up the server appropriate for your system, on a step-by-step basis.

SETUP FLOW

Follow the flowchart below to set up the server.


Selecting the server site
Select a suitable site for the server and assemble the 19-inch rack assembly.
Unpacking the system
Unpack the server and accessories from the chipping carton box.
Install the server
Install the server into the rack assembly.
Connecting peripheral devices
Connect peripheral devices to the server.
Connecting the power cord
Connect the power cord to the server.
Turning on the server
Power on the server to start software setups. Setups depend on the optional internal devices installed and the peripheral devices connected.
Installing the operating system
Install an operating system to the server. See Chapter 5.
Installing the utilities
Install the utilities in the provided NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM. See Chapter 6.
Making backup copies of system information
After all the system setup procedures are completed, make backup copies of system information.
System information is required for recovering the server from the trouble or after replacing the system board.

SELECTING SERVER SITE

To use the server, install it on a standard EIA 19-inch rack assembly.

Refer to the documentation attached to the rack or contact your sales agent for the installation of the server on the rack.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may result in death or serious personal injury. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not use the server in any unapproved place.
- Do not connect the ground line to a gas pipe.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may cause a fire, personal injury, or property damage. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not carry or install the server only by a single person.
- Do not install the server where the load may be concentrated on a specific point.
- Do not install any component on the server only by a single person.
- Do not pull out a device from the rack if the rack is unstable.
- Do not leave more than one device being pulled out from the rack.
- Do not provide the wiring exceeding the rating power.

Do not install the rack in the places listed below. Installing the rack or mounting the server on the rack in such a place may cause some malfunction to occur.

- Narrow space from which devices cannot be pulled out from the rack completely
- Place that cannot bear the total weights of the rack and devices mounted on the rack
- Place where stabilizers cannot be installed or where the rack can be installed only after the practice of proper earthquake-resistant construction
- Place of uneven or slanting floor
- Place of drastic temperature change (near a heater, air conditioner, or refrigerator)
- Place where intense vibration may be generated
- Place where corrosive gas is generated, chemicals are nearby, or chemicals may be accidentally sprayed over
- Place where a carpet not subject to anti-static process is laid.
- Place where some objects may be fallen on the rack
- Place near a device generating intense magnetic field (such as a TV, radio, broadcast/communication antenna, power transmission wire, and electromagnetic crane) is placed (If unavoidable, contact your sales agent to request proper shield construction.)
- Place where the power cord of the server must be connected to an AC outlet that shares the outlet of another device with large power consumption.
- Place near equipment that generates power noise (e.g., contact spark at power-on/power-off of commercial power supply through a relay). If you must install the server close to such equipment, request your sales agent for separate power cabling or noise filter installation.

UNPACKING THE SYSTEM

When you receive your system, inspect the shipping containers prior to unpacking. If the shipping boxes are damaged, note the damage, and if possible, photograph it for reference. After removing the contents of the containers, keep the cartons and the packing materials. If the contents appear damaged when you unpack the boxes, file a damage claim with the carrier immediately.

INSTALLING THE SERVER

This subsection provides the instructions for the rack-mount server unit into a standard EIA 19-inch rack cabinet.

Also this subsection describes the removal procedures for the rack-mount server unit from the 19-inch rack cabinet.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may result in death or serious personal injury. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not use any rack which does not conform to the relevant standard.
- Disconnect the power cord(s) before installing or removing the server.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may cause a fire, personal injury, or property damage. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not leave more than one device being pulled out from the rack.
- Do not lift the server only by a single person.
- Always install the server in the specified place.
- Do not install the server on the rack leaving the cover removed.
- Do not pinch your finger with mechanical components.

Restricted Access Location

The server is intended for installation in a Restricted Access Location, mounted above a non-combustible material.

ESD Precaution

An electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage disk drives, option boards, and other components. You can provide some ESD protection by wearing an antistatic wrist strap attached to chassis ground when handling system components.

Electronic devices can be easily damaged by static electricity. To prevent damage, keep them in their protective packaging when they are not installed in your system.

Checking Components

Prepare six screws (M5 screw, length 10 mm) and eight core nuts provided with the server.

> **NOTE:** To install the optional cable arm, a screw and a core nut are needed (provided with the cable arm).

Required Tools

You may only prepare a Phillips driver to install the server on the rack.

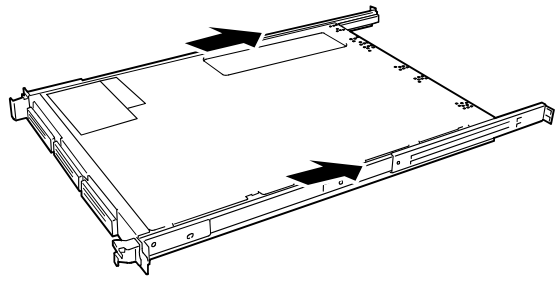
Installation Procedure for NEC Rack/Third Vendor's Rack

This server can be installed in either the NEC rack or a third vendor's rack. Take the following procedure to install the server in the rack:

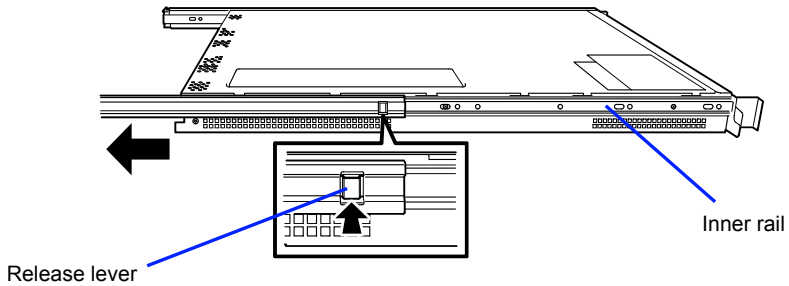
Removing the Rail Assemblies

Remove the sliding rails from the server.

Hold the rails and slowly slides them toward the rear of the server until a "click" is heard. The click indicates that the rails are locked.



Push the release levers on the right and left sides of the server, and remove the rail assemblies from the server while unlocking.



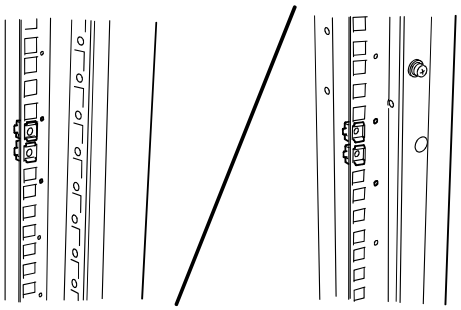
Only the inner rails remain screwed to the server when the rail assemblies have been removed.

IMPORTANT: The removed rail assemblies are to be installed on the inner rails later. To install each rail assembly on the correct inner rail, make a mark on the assemblies. Similarly, when installing more than one server, distinguish between the pairs of inner rails and rail assemblies of the servers by making marks.

Installing the Core Nuts

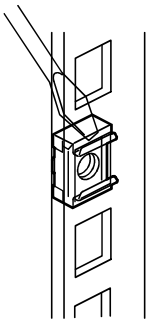
Install two core nuts on the front of the rack for each of the right and left sides and also two core nuts on the rear of the rack for each of the right and left sides. Accordingly, eight screws are installed in total.

Install two core nuts in 1U (the minimum unit of rack height). Three slots (angle holes) are opened per 1U of a rack. Install the core nuts at the upper two slots among the three slots. (For any NEC rack, round marks are put in the unit of 1U.) For two core nuts installed on the front of the rack, the upper nut is used to fix the front of the rail assembly, and the lower is used to support the set screw of the server. The core nuts installed on the rear of the rack are used to fix the rear of the rail assemblies.

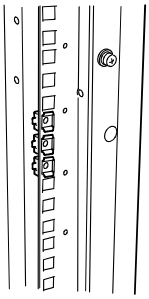


Hang either clip of a core nut on a square hole on the rack and insert another clip into the hole by using a tool such as a flat tip screwdriver.

NOTE: Confirm that all the core nuts are installed at the level.



If you are using the N8143-53F cable arm, install three core nuts on the right frame of the rear of the rack. An additional core nut is provided with N8143-53F cable arm.

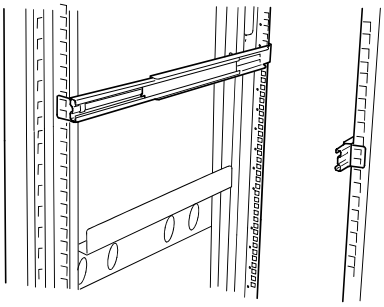


Installing the Rail Assemblies

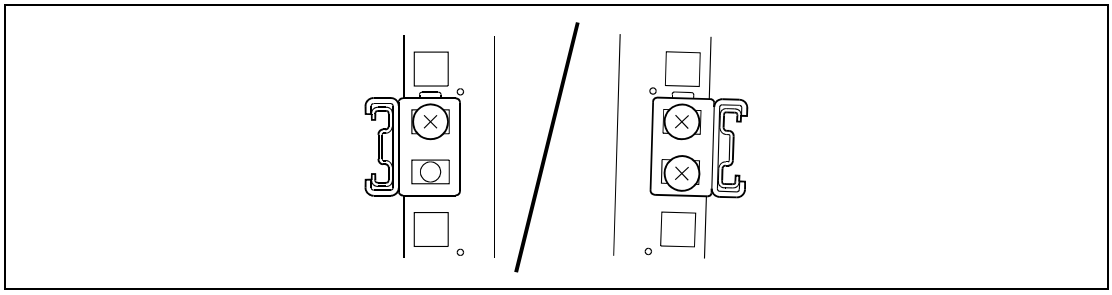
1. Align the front and rear frames of rail assembly to the location where the core nuts are installed.

   Locate the rail assembly so that the frame of the rack is located between core nuts and frames of rail assembly.

   NOTE: Confirm that the portion of the frame to fix the rail assembly is located in front of the rack frame.

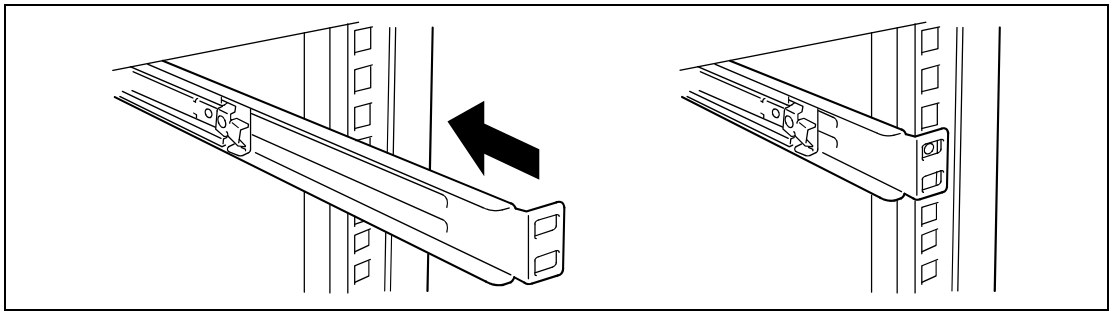


2. Hold the rail assembly and secure the front of the rail assembly with one screw and the rear of the rail assembly with two screws, while holding the rail assembly.



NOTE: Confirm that the rail assemblies are located at the level.

Secure the rear of the assembly after adjusting the depth of the rack and length of the rail assembly.

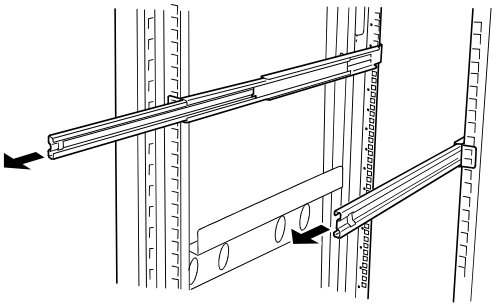


3. Install another rail assembly on the rack in the same way as described in steps 1 and 2 above.

NOTE: Confirm that the rail assembly is installed at the same level as that of the rail assembly already installed.

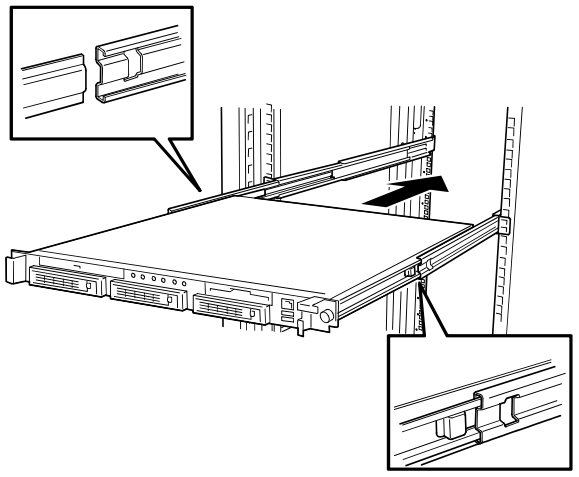
Installing the Server

1. Pull out the sliding rails of the right and left rail assemblies until they are locked.



2. At least two persons are required to install the server. Securely the server with its front side facing toward you.
3. Firmly fit the inner rails on the sides of the server into the rail assemblies, and then slowly push the server into the rack.

   The server is locked on its way into the rack.

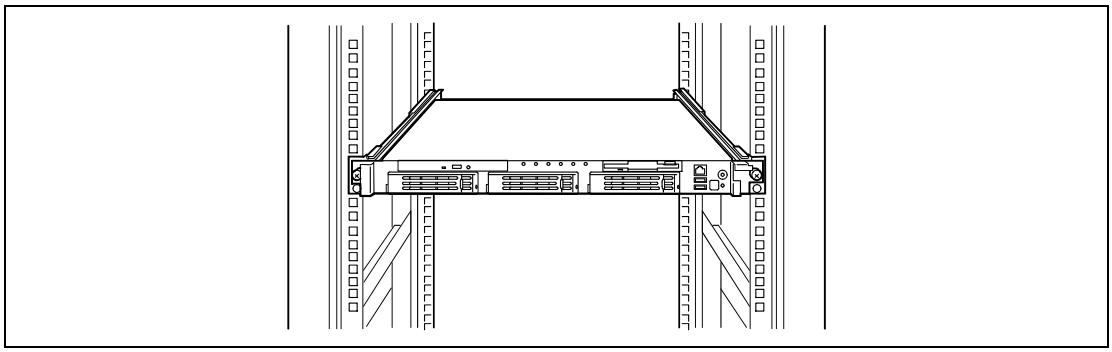


4. Push the server in while pressing the release levers on the right and left sides of the server.

> **NOTE:** When the server is installed for the first time, the mechanical parts are rather hard to slide. You may feel strong friction when pushing in the server. In this case, strongly push it in.

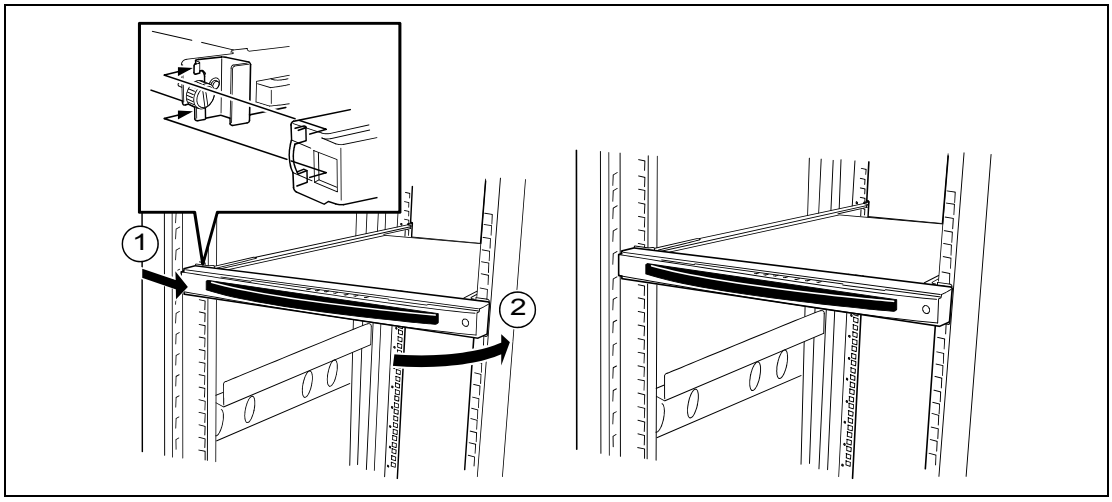
Securing the Server

1. Push the server into the rack as far as it will go.
2. Tighten the right and left thumb screws on the front panel to secure the server to the rack.



3. Install the front bezel.

   This completes the installing of the server.

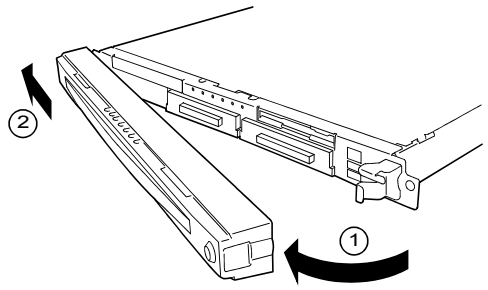


Removing the Server from the Rack Assembly

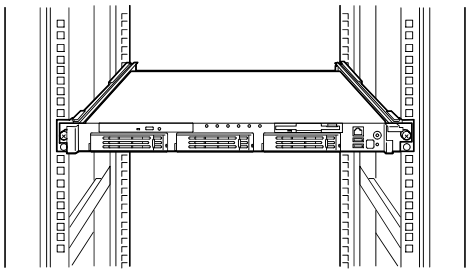
Take the following procedure to take out the server from the rack:

> Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may result in death or serious personal injury. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.
>
> - Do not lift the server only by a single person.
> - Do not pinch your finger with mechanical components.
> - Do not apply any load on the server pulled out from the rack.
> - Do not pull out a device from the rack if the rack is unstable.
> - Do not leave more than one device being pulled out from the rack.
> - Do not pull out the server from the rack while it is operating.

1. Confirm that the power of the server is OFF, and disconnect the power cable and all the interface cables connected to the server.
2. Remove the front bezel.



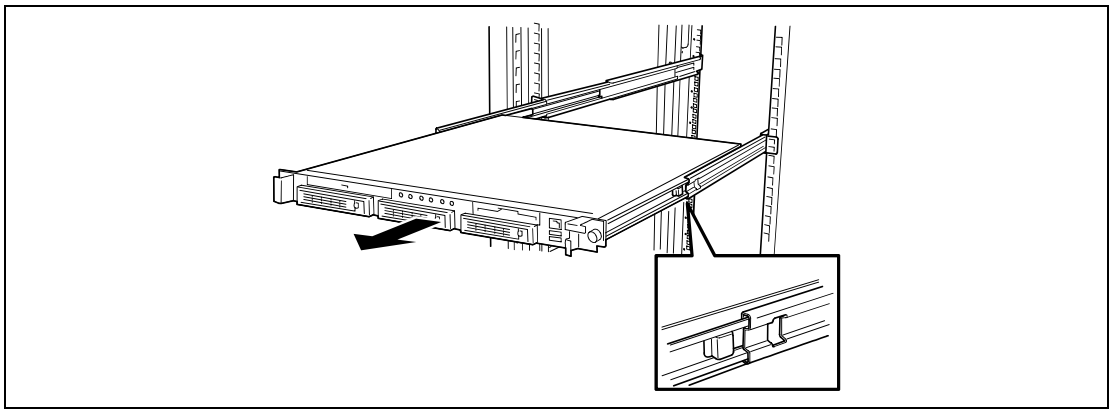
3. Loosen two thumb screws.



4. Pull out the server from the rack slowly and carefully.

The server clicks to be latched.

IMPORTANT: Do not apply any load on the server pulled out from the rack. Doing so may cause personal injury if the server drops.



5. Pull out the server from the rack with the right and left release lever pressed to release the latch.

6. Hold the server and pull it out from the rack.

To remove some mechanical parts of the rack, see the installation procedure.

CONNECTING PERIPHERAL DEVICES

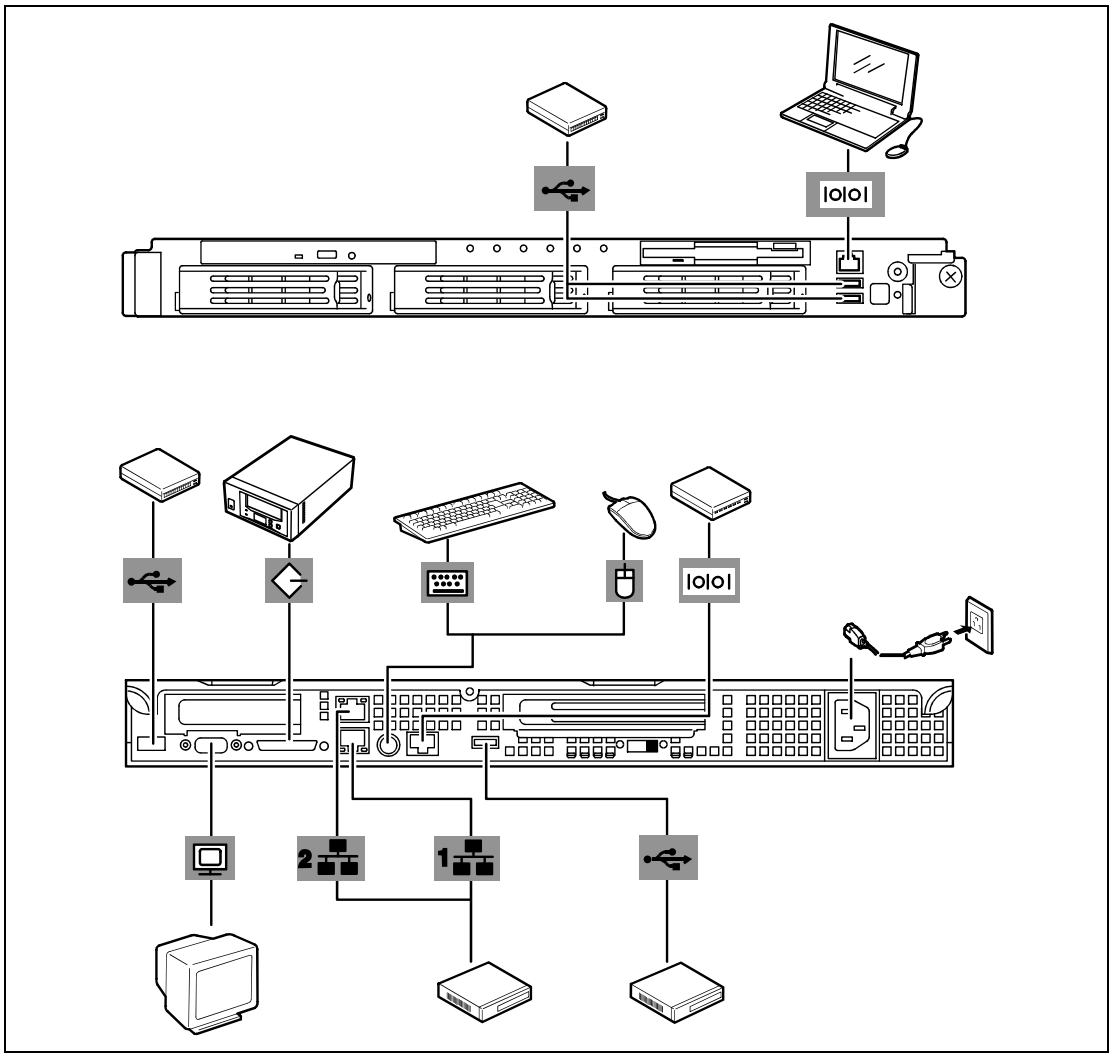
Connect peripheral devices to the server. The server is provided with connectors for wide variety of peripheral devices on its front and rear. The figure on the next page illustrates available peripheral devices for the server in the standard configuration and locations of the connectors for the devices.

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may cause a fire, personal injury, or property damage. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not connect any interface cable with the power cord of the NEC Express Server plugged to a power source.
- Do not use any unauthorized interface cable.

IMPORTANT:

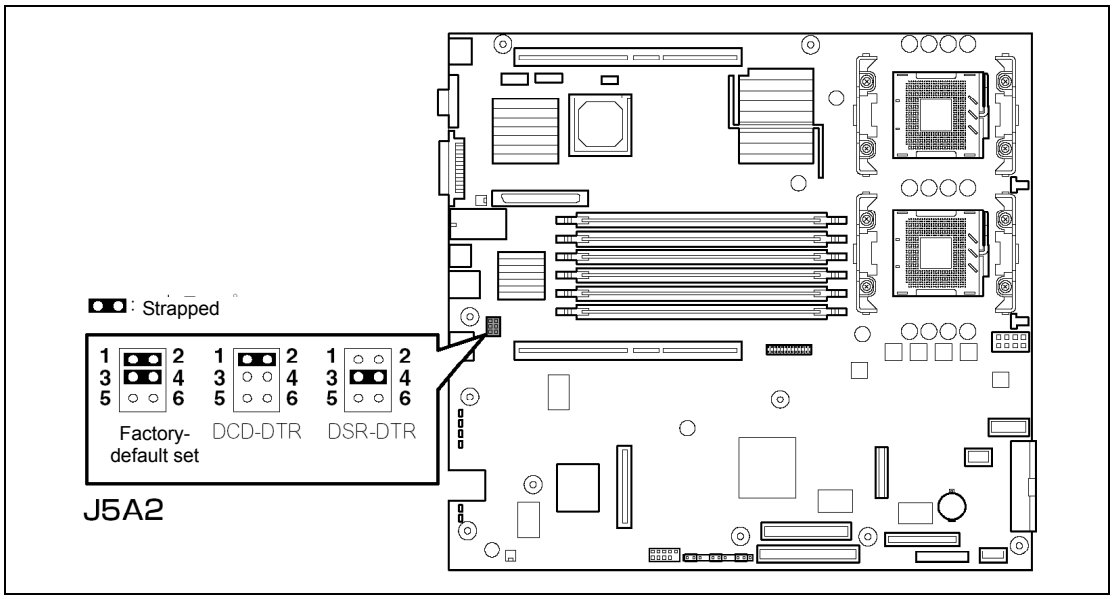
- Power off the server and a peripheral device before connection. Connecting a powered peripheral device to the powered server will cause malfunctions and failures.
- To connect a third-party peripheral device or interface cable to the server, consult with your sales agent for availability of such a device or cable. Some third-party devices may not be used for the server.
- The LAN connector and the serial port 2 connector of this server have the same shape. Be careful not to connect a cable to a wrong connector. To prevent wrong connection, write "LAN port" on a tag and put the tag to the connector of the LAN cable that is to be connected to this server.
- The total length of a cable (including the connection cable in SCSI device) is limited by the SCSI standard. Ask your sales representative for details. (The internal cable of the server is 0.1 m long.)
- A leased line cannot be connected directly to the serial port connectors.
- Secure the power cord(s) and interface cables with a tie wrap.
- Form the cables in such a way that they will not come into contact with the door or the guide rails on the sides of the server.



NOTE: Make sure of the cable you are going to connect. The LAN connector and the serial port 2 connector of this server have the same shape. Be careful not to connect a cable to a wrong connector. To prevent wrong connection, write "LAN port" on a tag and put the tag to the connector of the LAN cable that is to be connected to this server.

Connection to Serial Port

Various types of serial devices can be connected to the RJ-45 serial ports on the front and rear panels of the server. Some devices require the setting of the jumper pin (J5A2) on the mother board to be changed according to the DCD/DSR signal specification, or they need to be connected via an optional serial port conversion cable.



For server applications that require a DB9 serial connector, you must use an 8-pin RJ-45-to-DB9 adapter. The following table defines the pin-out required for the adapter to provide RS232 support.

COM2 Port Adapter Pin-out

RJ45	Signal	Abbreviation	DB9
1	Request to Send	RTS	7
2	Data Terminal Ready	DTR	4
3	Transmitted Data	TD	3
4	Signal Ground	SGND	5
5	Ring Indicator	RI	9
6	Received Data	RD	2
7	DCD or DSR	DCD/DSR	1 or 6
8	Clear To Send	CTS	8

CONNECTING POWER CORD

Connect the provided power cord to the server.

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may result in death or serious personal injury. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not hold the power plug with a wet hand.
- Do not connect the ground wire to a gas pipe.

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may cause a fire, personal injury, or property damage. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not plug the power cord in to an improper power source.
- Do not connect the power cord to an outlet that has an illegal number of connections.
- Insert the power plug into the outlet as far as it goes.
- Use the authorized power cord only.

1. Plug the provided power cord into the power receptacle on the rear of the server.
2. Plug the other end of the power cord into the wall outlet.

IMPORTANT:

- Connect the power cord to a circuit breaker of 15A or less.
- Secure the power cord with a tie wrap.

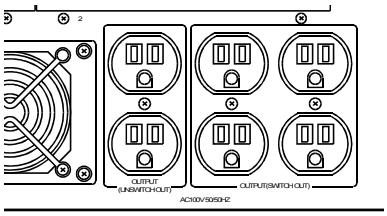
To connect the power cord from the server to an interruptive power supply (UPS), use service outlets on the rear of the UPS.

The UPS service outlets are categorized into two groups: SWITCH OUT and UN-SWITCH OUT. (They may be called "OUTPUT1" and "OUTPUT2".)

To control power supply with an application (NEC ESMPRO/UPSController) that controls the UPS, connect the power cord to an SWITCH OUT outlet.

For constant power supply, connect the power cord to a UN-SWITCH OUT outlet. (Connect the modem that is in service for 24 hours to this outlet.)

<Example>



When the power cord from the server to a UPS, change the BIOS setup of the server to link with power supply from the UPS.

To power on the server from the UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply), select [Server] - [AC-Link] - [Power On].

Change a parameter for "AC-Link" under the Server menu of the BIOS SETUP utility. See Chapter 4 for details.

TURNING ON THE SERVER

Turn on the server and follow the on-screen instructions for setup.

IMPORTANT: Before turning on the server:

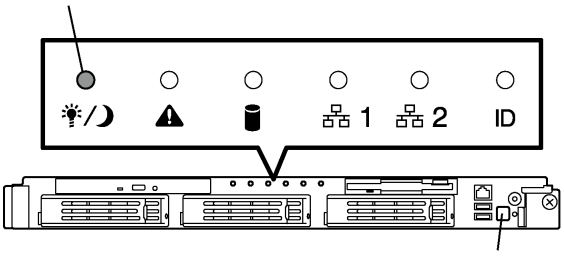
- Some optional boards require setups with the SETUP utility before installation. If the server has a PCI board with the PCI-to-PCI bridge installed, the SETUP utility is enabled to launch. Check on the board specifications to find out whether it requires pre-installation setups before actually installing the board.
- Some installed optional devices or connected peripheral devices require setups before proceeding to the next step.

To use the server with no optional devices installed besides the graphic board, install a desired OS to the server.

1. Make sure all external devices, such as a video display, keyboard, and mouse (optional) have been connected, and the power cords are connected.
2. Power on the video display and any other external devices.
3. Make sure that the floppy disk drive contains no floppy disk and the CD-ROM drive contains no bootable CD-ROM.
4. Open the front bezel.
5. Press the POWER switch.

NOTES:

- If the power cord is connected to the power control unit such as the UPS, turn on the power control unit.
- Connect the power cord and wait a few seconds before pressing the POWER switch. The POWER switch does not work in a few seconds after connecting the power cord due to BMC (Baseboard Management Controller) firmware start-up.



The POWER lamp on the front of the server comes on.

In a few seconds, the NEC logo appears on the screen and the Power On Self-Test (POST) begins.

The POST runs automatically when you power on the server or reset it with a keyboard operation (**Ctrl** + **Alt** + **Delete**). The POST runs diagnostics, initializes the server, sets interrupt vectors, detects installed peripheral devices, and boots the operating system (if installed). See Chapter 2 for detailed description on POST.

If the server halts before completing the POST, the POST emits a beep code indicating a fatal system error requiring immediate attention. (See Chapter 8, "Troubleshooting," for troubleshooting information.)

During memory test, the POST displays the amount of memory it was able to access and test. Depending on the amount of installed memory, it may take several minutes to complete the memory test.

NOTE: The factory-set is defined to hide the POST screen with the NEC logo screen. You can always change the NEC logo screen to the POST screen by pressing **Esc**. To change the start-up screen, use the BIOS setup utility, "SETUP." (See Chapter 4 for details.)

During the POST, you will see the banner message to prompt you to launch the BIOS SETUP utility stored in ROM on system board or on an installed option board.

Start the BIOS SETUP utility appropriate to your system environment to change the BIOS setup. For the BIOS SETUP for the server, see Chapter 4. For the BIOS SETUP for the option board, refer to the manual that comes with the option board.

INSTALLING OPERATING SYSTEM

See Chapter 5 for installing the Microsoft Windows 2000.

To install the other operating system, contact your sales agent.

IMPORTANT:

- Use NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for initial setup of your server. The NEC EXPRESSBUILDER is a support software for the NEC Express5800 server. It simplifies the process of installing and configuring your server. See Chapter 6 for details on NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.
- Before installing the operating system, adjust the system date and time by using the BIOS setup utility "SETUP." See the next chapter for detail.

INSTALLING UTILITIES

Install the utilities that come with the server. See Chapter 6 for details.

MAKING BACKUP COPIES OF SYSTEM INFORMATION

The system information includes the current BIOS settings and any specific information for the server.

Save the information after completing the system setup.

Without the backup data, you will not be able to recover the information.

You can save the information by the following process.

1. Set the CD-ROM "NEC EXPRESSBUILDER" in the CD-ROM drive and reboot the system.
2. Select [Tools].
3. Select [Off-line Maintenance Utility].
4. Select [System Information Management].
5. Set a floppy disk in the floppy disk drive.
6. Select [Save].

Chapter 4

Configuring Your Server

This chapter describes Basic Input Output System (BIOS) configuration.

When you install the server for the first time or install/remove optional devices, thoroughly read this chapter for better understanding and correct setups.

SYSTEM BIOS ~ SETUP ~

The SETUP utility is provided to make basic hardware configuration for the server. This utility is pre-installed in the flash memory of the server and ready to run.

The server is configured with the correct parameters using the SETUP utility and shipped in the best conditions. Thus, you don't need to use the SETUP utility in most cases. However, you might wish to use the SETUP utility in the cases described below.

IMPORTANT:

- The SETUP utility is intended for system administrator use only.
- The SETUP utility allows you to set a password. The server is provided with two levels of password: Administrator and User. With the Administrator password, you can view and change all system parameters of the SETUP utility. With the User password, system parameters available for viewing and changing are limited.
- Do not set any password before installing the OS.
- The server contains the latest version of the SETUP utility. Dialog boxes appear on your SETUP utility, thus, may differ from descriptions in this User's Guide. If you find anything unclear, see the online help or ask your sales representative.
- Use the Exit menu when exiting the SETUP utility. Exiting the utility with the POWER switch or reset operation causes the stored parameters to lose.

Starting SETUP Utility

Powering on the server starts POST (Power On Self-Test) and displays its check results. If the NEC logo is displayed, press **Esc**.

After a few seconds, the following message appears at bottom left on the screen.

```
Press <F2> to enter SETUP
```

Press **F2** to start the SETUP utility and display its Main menu.

If you have previously set a password with the SETUP utility, the password entry screen appears. Enter the password.

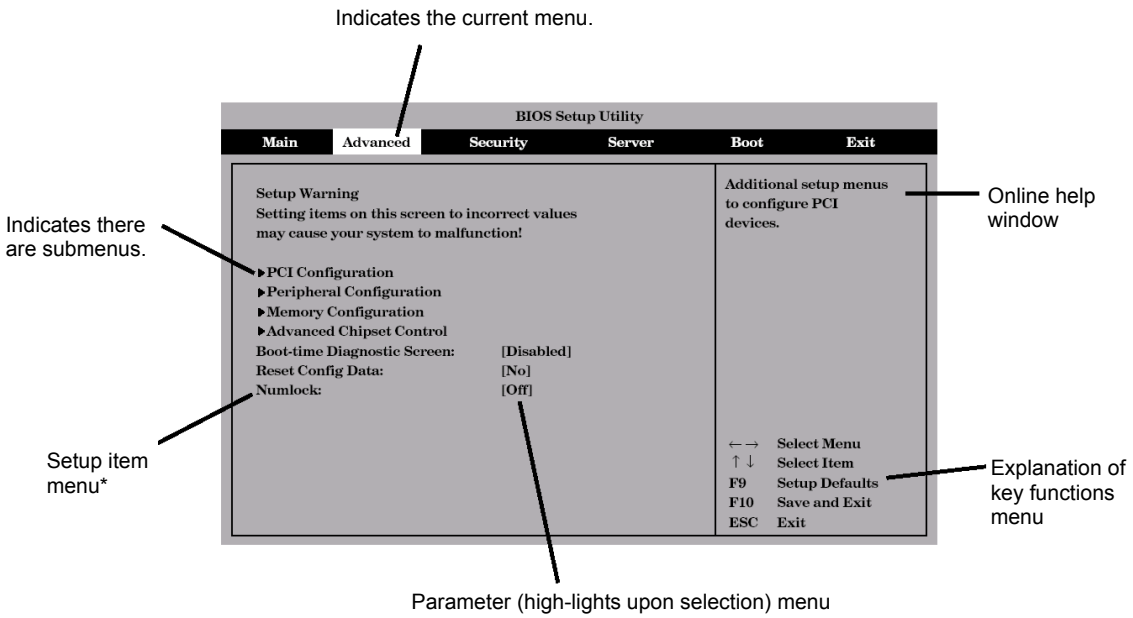
```
Enter password:[                ]
```

Up to three password entries will be accepted. If you fail to enter the password correctly for three consecutive times, the server halts. (You can no longer proceed.) Power off the server.

NOTE: The server is provided with two levels of password: Administrator and User. With the Administrator password, you can view and change all system parameters. With the User password, system parameters available for viewing and changing are limited.

Description on On-Screen Items and Key Usage

Use the following keyboard keys to work with the SETUP utility. (Key functions are also listed at the bottom of the screen.)



* The menus displayed in gray indicates the information only or unchangeable secured by BIOS password.

Cursor (↑, ↓):	Selects an item on the screen. The highlighted item is currently selected.
Cursor (←, →):	Selects the Main, Advanced, Security, Server, Boot, or Exit menu.
– and **+**:	Changes the value (parameter) of the selected item. When a submenu option (an option preceded by "➤") is selected, these keys are disabled.
Enter	Press **Enter** to select (determine) parameters.
Esc	Exit SETUp and return to the previous screen.
F9:	Sets the parameter of the currently displayed item back to the factory set parameter.
F10:	Save and exit the SETUP utility.

Configuration Examples

The following describes examples of configuration required to use software-link features or for system operations.

Date and Time

To display system date or time

Select [Main] - [System Time], [System Date].

Link with Management Software

To link with temperature monitoring feature of NEC ESMPRO

Select [Server] - [Temperature Sensor] - [Enabled].

To control power supply of the server with NEC ESMPRO Manager via the network

Select [Advanced] - [Advanced Chipset Control] - [Wake On Lan/PME PCI-XB] - [Enabled].

UPS

To link power supply with the UPS

- To power on the server when power is supply from the UPS

  Select [Server] - [AC-Link] - [Power On].

- To keep the server off-powered even when power is supplied from the UPS if the POWER switch was used to power off

  Select [Server] - [AC-Link] - [Last State].

- To keep the server off-powered even when power is supplied from the UPS

  Select [Server] - [AC-Link] - [StayOff].

Boot

To change the boot order of devices connected to the server

Select [Boot] and specify the boot order.

To display POST check results

Select [Advanced] - [Boot-time Diagnostic Screen] - [Enabled].

You can also press **Esc** while the NEC log is on the screen to display POST check results.

To use remote wake-up feature

- Via Modem:

  Select [Advanced] - [Advanced Chipset Control] - [Wake on Ring] - [Enabled].

- Via LAN:

  Select [Advanced] - [Advanced Chipset Control] - [Wake on LAN/PME PCI-XB] - [Enabled].

- Via PCI device:

  Select [Advanced] - [Advanced Chipset Control] - [Wake on PME/PCI-XC] - [Enabled].
  Or,

  Select [Advanced] - [Advanced Chipset Control] - [Wake on LAN/PME PCI-XB] - [Enabled].

- Via RTC alarm:

  Select [Advanced] - [Advanced Chipset Control] - [Wake on RTC Alarm] - [Enabled].

To control from the HW console

Select [Server] - [Console Redirection] and set each item.

Memory

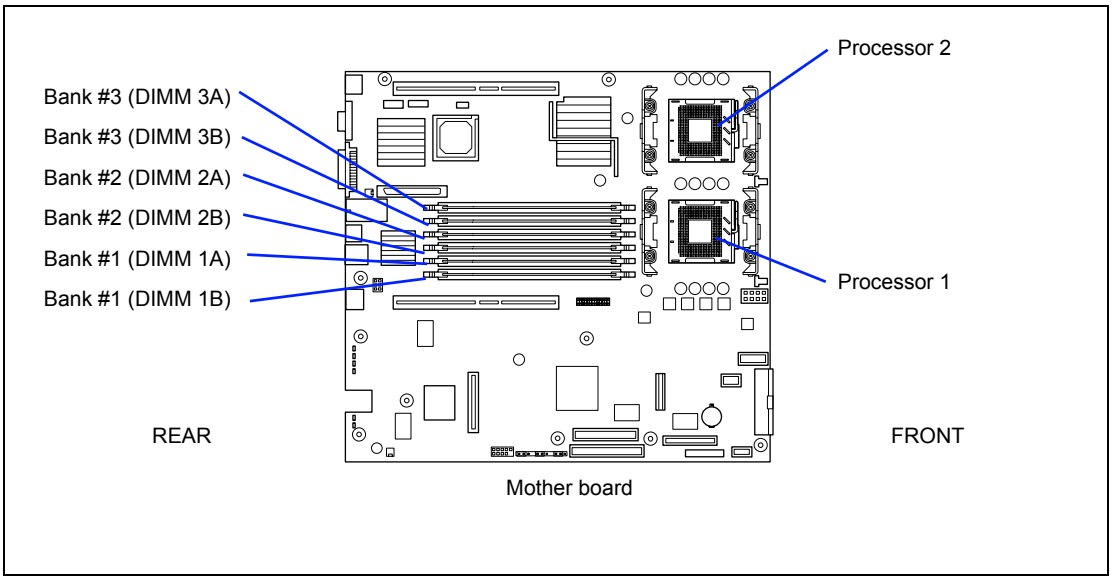
To enable the memory degradation feature

Select [Advanced] - [Memory Configuration] - [Extended Memory Test] - [Every-Location].

To check the installed memory (DIMM) status

Select [Advanced] - [Memory Reconfiguration] - [Bank #n] and check the status indications. (n: 1 - 3)

The on-screen DIMM numbers and socket locations on the mother board are associated as shown in the figure below.



To clear the memory (DIMM) error information

Select [Advanced] - [Memory Configuration] - [Memory Retest] - [Enabled] and reboot the server.

CPU

To check the installed CPU status

Select [Main] - [Processor Settings] and check the status indications.

The on-screen CPU numbers and socket locations on the mother board are associated as shown in the figure on the previous page.

To clear the CPU error information

Select [Main] - [Processor Settings] - [Processor Retest] - [Enabled] and reboot the server.

Keyboard

To set Numlock

Select [Advanced] - [Numlock].

Security

To set passwords on the BIOS level

Select [Security] - [Set Administrator Password] and enter a password.

Set Administrator password first, then User password.

To enable/disable the power switch mask feature

Select [Security] - [Power Switch Inhibit] - [Enabled].

Select [Security] - [Power Switch Inhibit] - [Disabled].

IMPORTANT: Masking the POWER switch disables forced shutdown (see Chapter 8) as well as power on/off using the POWER switch.

To set the secure mode

Select [Security] - [Set User Password] and enter the password.

Select [Security] - [Secure Mode] and set each item.

Peripherals

To set up external devices

Select [Advanced] - [Peripheral Configuration] and set up each I/O port.

Internal Devices

To set up internal PCI devices of the server

Select [Advanced] - [PCI Configuration] and set up each device.

To install the disk array controller

Select [Advanced] - [PCI Configuration] - [PCI Slot 1x ROM] - [Enabled].

x=C: Riser card of low-profile type

x=B: Riser card of full-length/full-height type

To clear the hardware configuration data (after installing/removing internal devices)

Select [Advanced] - [Reset Config Data] - [Yes].

Saving the Configuration Data

To save the BIOS configuration data

Select [Exit] - [Exit Saving Changes].

To discard changes to the BIOS configuration data

Select [Exit] - [Exit Discarding Changes] or [Discard Changes].

To resume the factory-set BIOS configuration data

Select [Exit] - [Load Setup Defaults].

To save the current settings as user-defined configuration

Select [Exit] - [Save Custom Defaults].

To load the user-defined configuration data

Select [Exit] - [Load Custom Defaults].

Menu and Parameter Descriptions

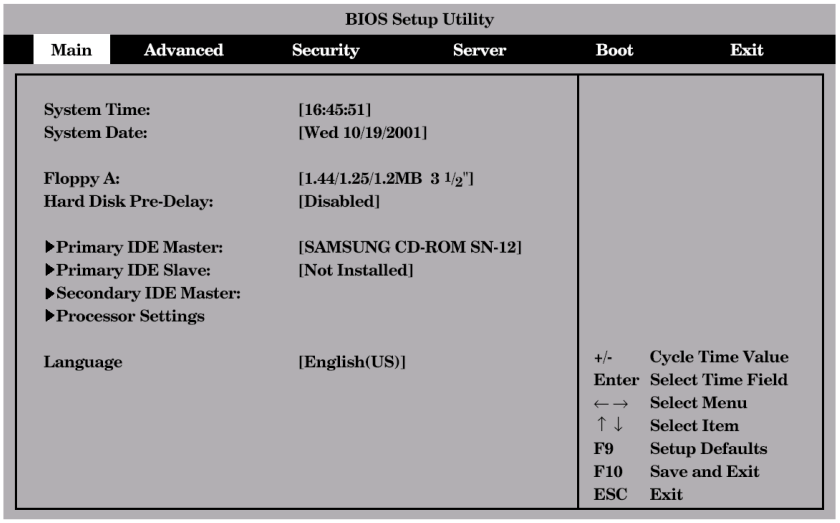
The SETUP utility has the following six major menus:

- Main
- Advanced
- Security
- Server
- Boot
- Exit

To set minute functions, select a submenu from the above menus. The following describes available functions and parameters, as well as the factory-set, for each menu.

Main

Start the SETUP utility to display the Main menu. The menu item preceded by "➤" mark has its submenus. Select an option with the "➤" mark and press **Enter** to display its submenu.



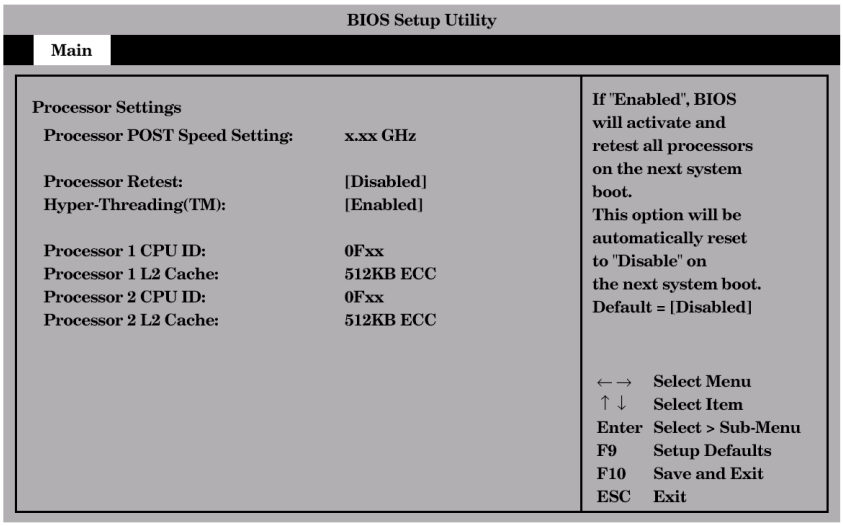
Available options in the Main and descriptions are listed below.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
System Time	HH:MM:SS	Sets the system time.	
System Date	MM/DD/YYYY	Sets the system date.	
Floppy A:	Not Installed [1.44/1.25 MB/1.2 MB 3 1/2"] 2.88 MB 3 1/2"	Sets the floppy disk drive A (standard configuration).	
Hard Disk Pre-delay	[Disabled] 3 seconds 6 seconds 9 seconds 12 seconds 15 seconds 21 seconds 30 seconds	Causes the BIOS to insert a delay before attempting to detect IDE drives in the system during POST.	
Primary IDE Master/ Primary IDE Slave/ Secondary IDE Master	–	Displays information on the device connected to the channel. Some items may be modified, however, use the factory-set values.	
Processor Settings	–	Displays information on processor (CPU) and menu window to setup.	
Language	[English (US)] Español (SP) Deutsch (DE) Italiano (IT) Français (FR)	Selects which language SETUP displays.	

[ ]: Factory-set

Processor Settings

Select "Processor Settings" on Main menu to display the following menu.


BIOS Setup Utility
Main
Processor Settings
Processor POST Speed Setting: x.xx GHz
Processor Retest: [Disabled]
Hyper-Threading(TM): [Enabled]
Processor 1 CPU ID: 0Fxx
Processor 1 L2 Cache: 512KB ECC
Processor 2 CPU ID: 0Fxx
Processor 2 L2 Cache: 512KB ECC
If "Enabled", BIOS will activate and retest all processors on the next system boot.
This option will be automatically reset to "Disable" on the next system boot.
Default = [Disabled]
← → Select Menu
↑ ↓ Select Item
Enter Select > Sub-Menu
F9 Setup Defaults
F10 Save and Exit
ESC Exit

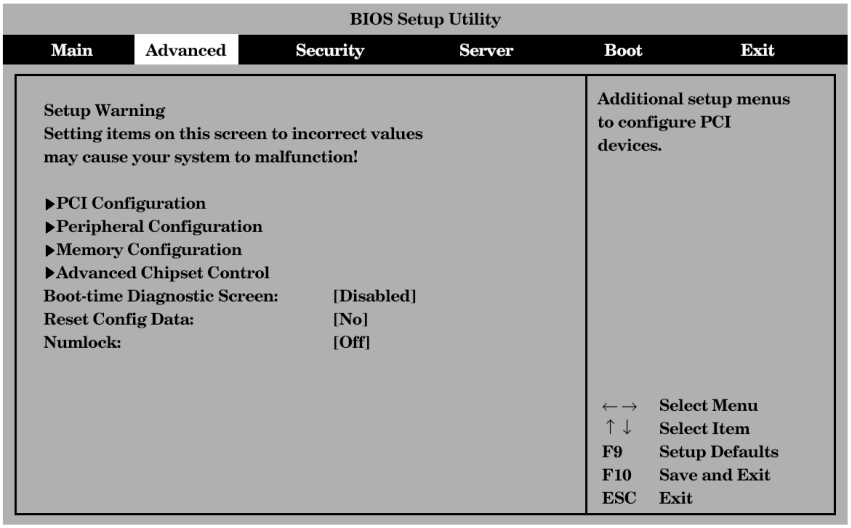
See the table below for setup options on the screen.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Processor POST Speed Setting	–	Reports the speed of the processor measured at POST. (View only)	
Processor Retest	[Disabled] Enabled	Clears CPU error information and retests all processors on the next boot. After retesting, BIOS turns this option automatically to "Disable".	
Hyper-Threading (TM)	Disabled [Enabled]	Specify whether Hyper-Threading Technology is enabled or disabled.	
Processor 1 CPU ID	Numeric (0Fxx) Disabled Not installed	A numeral indicates the ID of processor 1. "Disabled" indicates that the processor is defected. "Not Installed" indicates that the processor is not installed. (View only)	
Processor 1 L2 Cache	–	Reports L2 Cache Size for Processor 1. (View only)	
Processor 2 CPU ID	Numeric (0Fxx) Disabled Not installed	A numeral indicates the ID of processor 2. "Disabled" indicates that the processor is defected. "Not Installed" indicates that the processor is not installed. (View only)	
Processor 2 L2 Cache	–	Reports L2 Cache Size for Processor 2. (View only)	

[ ]: Factory-set

Advanced

Move the cursor onto "Advanced" to display the Advanced menu. The menu item preceded by "➤" mark has its submenus. Select an option with the "➤" mark and press **Enter** to display its submenu.



See the table below for setup options on the screen.

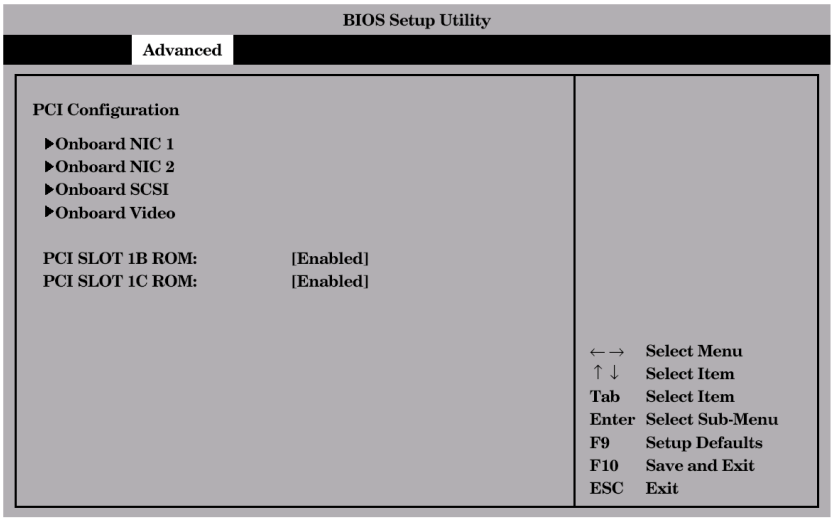
Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Boot-time Diagnostic Screen	[Disabled] Enabled	Specify whether the self-diagnosis (POST) running screen is displayed or not on booting. If this item is set to "Disabled," the "NEC" logo appears during POST. The Boot-time Diagnostic Screen is automatically enabled if redirection is enabled.	
Reset Config Data	[No] Yes	Select "Yes" to clear the configuration data (system information stored by POST). The parameter "No" will be resumed when the server restarts.	
Numlock	[Off] On	Enable or disable the Numlock function at system start-up.	

[ ]: Factory-set

IMPORTANT: If Reset Config Data is set to "Yes", boot device priority is also cleared. Take a note of boot device priority before changing the parameter. Restart the server with Exit Saving Changes option, start BIOS SETUP utility, and restore the boot device priority.

PCI Configuration

Select "PCI Configuration" on the Advanced menu to display the following screen. Select an option with the "➤" mark and press **Enter** to display its submenu.



Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
PCI Slot 1B ROM	[Enabled] Disabled	Used to enable or disable an option ROM that may be present on a PCI add-in card connected to the full-height riser card.	
PCI Slot 1C ROM	[Enabled] Disabled	Used to enable or disable an option ROM that may be present on a PCI add-in card connected to the low-profile riser card.	

[ ]: Factory-set

NOTES:

- When the LAN controller does not provide network booting, set the option ROM for the LAN board to "Disabled".
- When connecting a hard disk containing OS to the disk array controller, set the slot of the disk array controller to "Enabled".

Onboard NIC 1 / Onboard NIC 2 Submenu

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Onboard NIC	[Enabled] Disabled	Enables or disables onboard LAN controller.	
Onboard NIC 1 ROM	[Enabled] Disabled	Enables or disables onboard LAN controller expansion ROM.	
Embedded NIC 2 ROM	[Enabled] Disabled	Enables or disables onboard LAN controller expansion ROM.	

[ ]: Factory-set

Onboard SCSI Submenu

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Onboard SCSI	[Enabled] Disabled	Enables or disables onboard SCSI controller.	
Onboard SCSI ROM	[Enabled] Disabled	Enables or disables onboard SCSI controller expansion ROM.	

[ ]: Factory-set

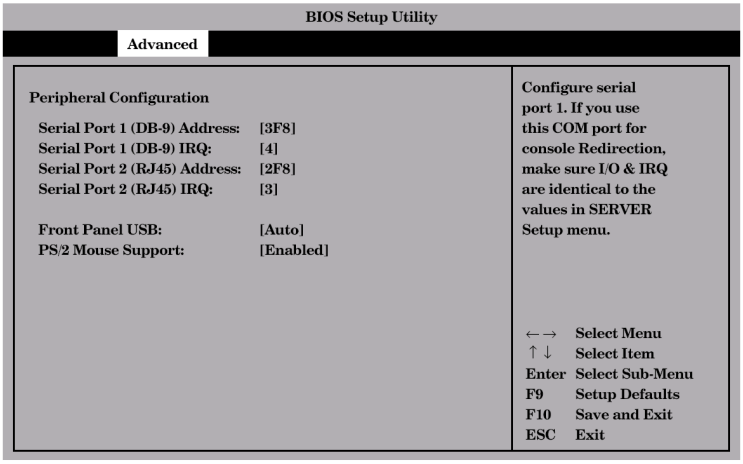
Onboard Video Submenu

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Onboard Video	[Enabled] Disabled	Enables or disables onboard video controller.	

[ ]: Factory-set

Peripheral Configuration

Select "Peripheral Configuration" on the Advanced menu to display the following screen.


BIOS Setup Utility
Advanced
Peripheral Configuration
Serial Port 1 (DB-9) Address: [3F8]
Serial Port 1 (DB-9) IRQ: [4]
Serial Port 2 (RJ45) Address: [2F8]
Serial Port 2 (RJ45) IRQ: [3]
Front Panel USB: [Auto]
PS/2 Mouse Support: [Enabled]
Configure serial port 1. If you use this COM port for console Redirection, make sure I/O & IRQ are identical to the values in SERVER Setup menu.
← → Select Menu
↑ ↓ Select Item
Enter Select Sub-Menu
F9 Setup Defaults
F10 Save and Exit
ESC Exit

See the table below for setup options on the screen.

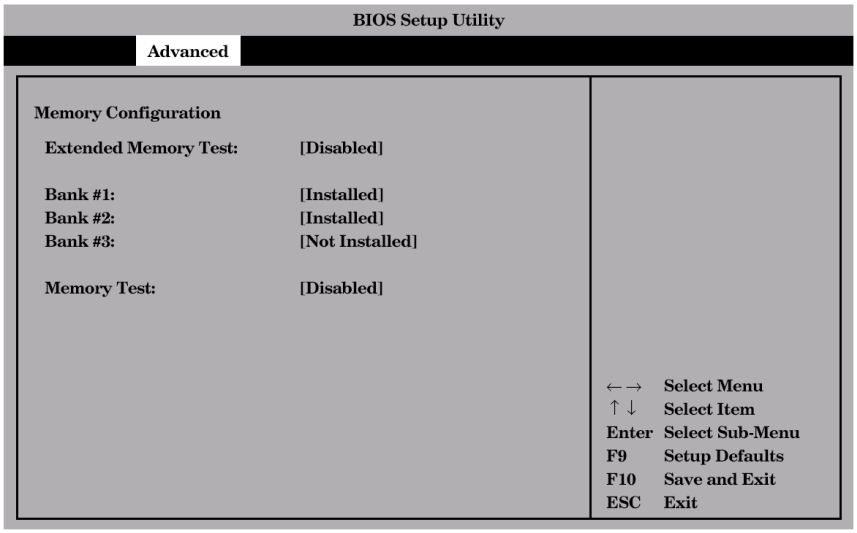
IMPORTANT: Make sure to avoid any conflict in the interrupt requests or the base I/O addresses. If an assigned value is already used by another resource, it appears in yellow. Any yellow value must be re-assigned.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Serial Port 1 (DB-9) Address	Disabled [3F8] 2F8 3E8 2E8	Used to configure the base I/O address for serial port 1.	
Serial Port 1 (DB-9) IRQ	[4] 3	Used to configure the interrupt for serial port 1.	
Serial Port 2 (RJ45) Address	Disabled 3F8 [2F8] 3E8 2E8	Used to configure the base I/O address for serial port 2.	
Serial Port 2 (RJ45) IRQ	4 [3]	Used to configure the interrupt for serial port 2.	
Legacy USB Support	Disabled Keyboard Only [Auto] Keyboard and Mouse	Disables or enables support for USB keyboards and mice. Set to Enable for use with a non-USB aware operation system such as DOS.	
PS/2 Mouse Support	Disabled [Enabled]	Specify whether the mouse is enabled or disabled.	

[ ]: Factory-set

Memory Configuration

Select "Memory Configuration" on the Advanced menu to display the following screen.



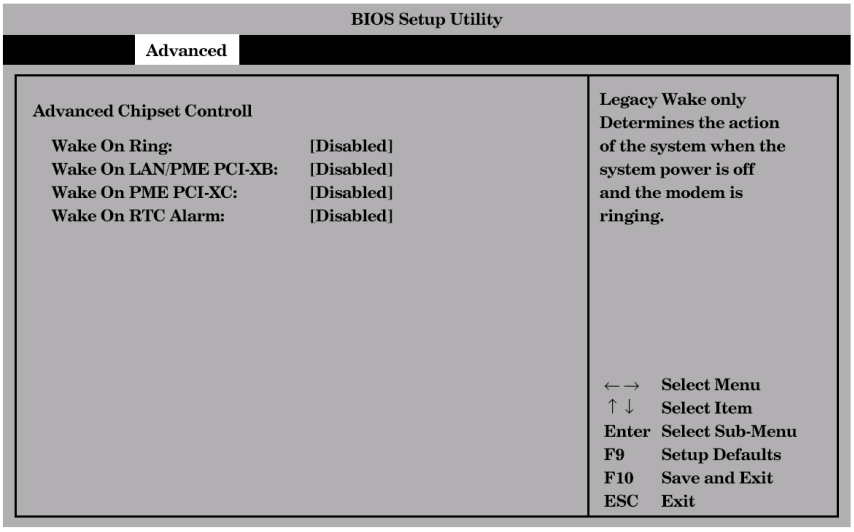
See the table below for setup options on the screen.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Extended Memory Test	1 MB 1 KB Every-Location [Disabled]	Extended memory test options run during POST. 1MB: Tests every 1-MB memory. 1KB: Tests every 1-KB memory. Every-Location: Tests every memory location. Disabled: Initializes memory. Note: While running the test, BIOS only accepts the <Space> key and the other keys (<F2>, <F4>, <F12>, and <Esc>) are ignored.	
DIMM Bank #1 - #3	Installed Disabled Not Installed	Indicates the current memory status. "Normal" indicates the normal status, "Error" indicates a memory error, and "None" indicates no DIMM installed (view only). Bank #1 indicates DIMMs in DIMM socket #1A and #1B. Bank #2 indicates DIMMs in DIMM Bank #2A and #2B. Bank #3 indicates DIMMs in DIMM Bank #3A and #3B. (Memory is interleaved and two DIMMs are used in pair.)	
Memory Retest	[Disabled] Enabled	Clears memory error information and retests all DIMMs on the next system boot. This option will be automatically reset to [Disabled] on the next system boot.	

[ ]: Factory-set

Advanced Chipset Control

Select "Advanced Chipset Control" on Advanced menu to display the following screen. The menu item preceded by "➤" mark has its submenus. Select an option with the "➤" mark and press **Enter** to display its submenu.


BIOS Setup Utility
Advanced
Advanced Chipset Controll
Wake On Ring: [Disabled]
Wake On LAN/PME PCI-XB: [Disabled]
Wake On PME PCI-XC: [Disabled]
Wake On RTC Alarm: [Disabled]
Legacy Wake only Determines the action of the system when the system power is off and the modem is ringing.
← → Select Menu
↑ ↓ Select Item
Enter Select Sub-Menu
F9 Setup Defaults
F10 Save and Exit
ESC Exit

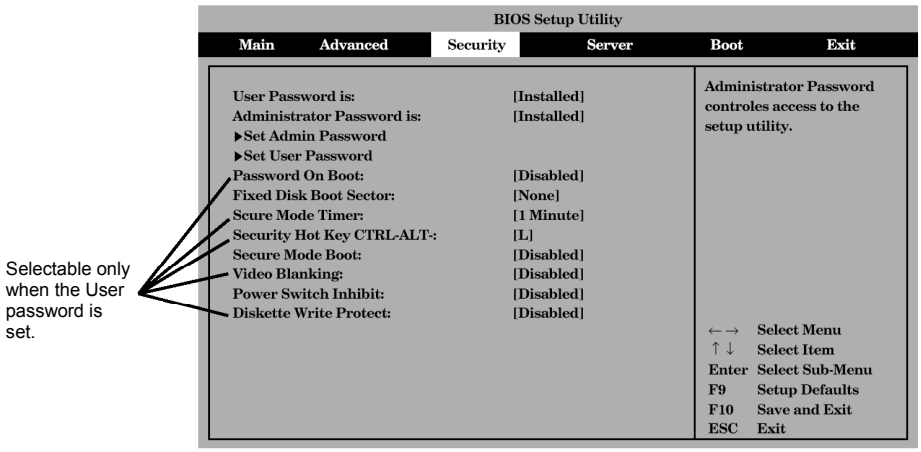
See the table below for setup options on the screen.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Wake on Ring	[Disabled] Enabled	Enables or disables the remote power-on features via serial port (modem).	
Wake on LAN/ PME PCI-XB	[Disabled] Enabled	Enables or disables the remote power-on features via network or PCI device (PCI Power Management Enable wake up event).	
Wake on PME PCI-XC	[Disabled] Enabled	Enables or disables the remote power-on features by PCI device (PCI Power Management Enable wake up event) installed to the PCI riser C.	
Wake on RTC Alarm	[Disabled] Enabled	Enables or disables the remote power-on features using a RTC Alarm features.	

[ ]: Factory-set

Security

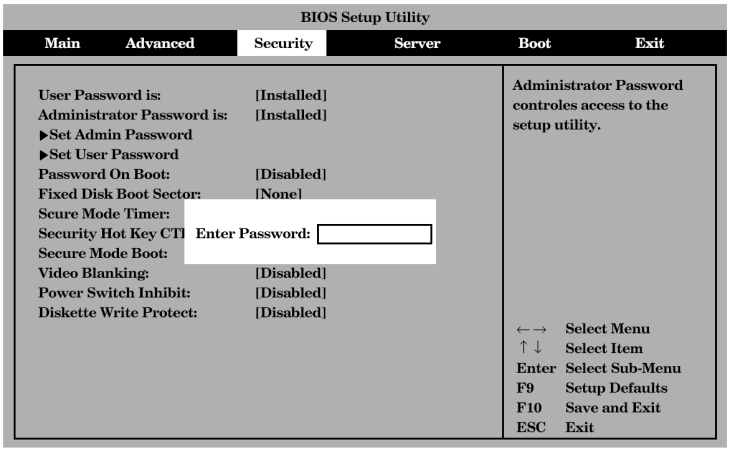
Move the cursor onto "Security" to display the Security menu.


BIOS Setup Utility
Main Advanced Security Server Boot Exit
User Password is: [Installed]
Administrator Password is: [Installed]
▶Set Admin Password
▶Set User Password
Password On Boot: [Disabled]
Fixed Disk Boot Sector: [None]
Scure Mode Timer: [1 Minute]
Security Hot Key CTRL-ALT-: [L]
Secure Mode Boot: [Disabled]
Video Blanking: [Disabled]
Power Switch Inhibit: [Disabled]
Diskette Write Protect: [Disabled]
Administrator Password controles access to the setup utility.
← → Select Menu
↑ ↓ Select Item
Enter Select Sub-Menu
F9 Setup Defaults
F10 Save and Exit
ESC Exit
Selectable only when the User password is set.

Select "Set Administrator Password" or "Set User Password" and press **Enter** to display the following pop-up screen.

The screen below shows when "Set Administrator Password" is selected.

Set a password on this pop-up screen. Enter a password of up to seven alphanumeric characters and symbols from the keyboard.



IMPORTANT:

- User password setup is not available before Administrator password setup.
- Do not set any password before installing the OS.
- If you forget any password, see "Configuring Mother Board Jumpers" in this chapter.

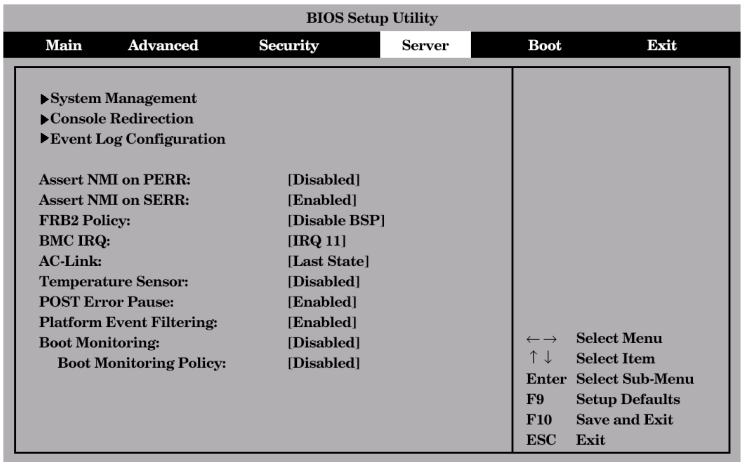
See the table below for setup options on the screen.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
User Password is	Installed Not Installed	Indicates whether the user password is set or not (view only).	
Administrator Password is	Installed Not Installed	Indicates whether the administrator password is set or not (view only).	
Set Admin Password	Up to 7 alphanumeric characters	Press **Enter** to display the administrator password entry screen. With the administrator password, all SETUP menus are available for access. This option is available only when you log into the SETUP utility with the administrator password.	
Set User Password	Up to 7 alphanumeric characters	Press **Enter** to display the user password entry screen. With a user password, accessible SETUP menus are restricted. This option is available only if the Administrator Password is specified.	
Password On Boot	[Disabled] Enabled	Specify whether to request a password entry at boot-up. Administrator password setup is required beforehand. When the administrator password is specified and this option is disabled, the BIOS assumes that a system boot attempt is made by a user.	
Fixed Disk Boot Sector	[Normal] Write Protect	Prevents data from being written to IDE hard disks. The server does not support IDE hard disks.	
Secure Mode Timer	[1 minute] 2 minutes 5 minutes 10 minutes 20 minutes 60 minutes 120 minutes	Set the period from no input from the keyboard or mouse to the point at which the system enters into the secure mode. If this item is set to "Disabled," the system does not enter the secure mode.	
Security Hot Key CTRL-ALT-	[L] Z	Specify the hot key to invoke secure mode features. Pressing the assigned key along with **Ctrl** and **Alt** invoke secure mode. This option is enabled when User Password is set.	
Diskette Write Protect	[Disabled] Enabled	Specify whether data write to the floppy disk inserted into the floppy disk drive is enabled or disabled in the secure mode.	
Secure Mode Boot	[Disabled] Enabled	Specify whether the system boots in secure mode. This option is enabled when User Password is set.	
Video Blanking	[Disabled] Enabled	Specify whether to turn off the monitor when secure mode is activated.	
Power Switch Inhibit	[Disabled] Enabled	Enables or disables the POWER switch. If "Enabled" is selected, power-off with the POWER switch becomes unavailable after OS boot-up. (Forced shut down also becomes unavailable. Forced shut down is a feature to shut down by pressing the POWER switch for at least four seconds.)	
Diskette Write Protect	[Disabled] Enabled	Controls access to the floppy disk drive during the secure mode.	

[ ]: Factory-set

Server

Move the cursor onto "Server" to display the Server menu.



The table below lists options that you can specify on the Server menu screen and their functions. To make a selection for "System Management", "Console Redirection", and "Event Log Configuration", first select a desired option and press **Enter** to display its submenu.

See the table below for setup options on the screen.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Assert NMI on PERR	[Disabled] Enabled	Sets support of PCI PERR.	
Assert NMI on SERR	Disabled [Enabled]	Sets support of PCI SERR.	
FRB-2 Policy	[Disable BSP] Do not Disable BSP Retry 3 Times Disable FRB2 Timer	Set this item to "Disable BSP."	
BMC IRQ	Disabled IRQ 5 [IRQ 11]	Sets the BMC IRQ.	
AC-Link	Stays Off [Last State] Power On	Sets the AC-LINK feature. Determines the mode of operation if a power loss occurs. (See the table below.) IMPORTANT: To power on the server from the UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply), select [Server] - [AC-Link] - [Power On].	
Temperature Sensor	[Disabled] Enabled	Enables or disables temperature sensor monitoring feature.	

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
POST Error Pause	Disabled [Enabled]	Specifies whether the system waits for user intervention on critical POST errors or not. If no keyboard is connected to the system, this option is ignored and the system always continues to bootup.	
Platform Event Filtering	Disabled [Enabled]	Disable or enable the event report function of Baseboard Management Controller (BMC).	
Option	**Parameter**	**Description**	**Your Setting**
Platform Event Filtering	Disabled [Enabled]	Disable or enable the event report function of Baseboard Management Controller (BMC).	
Boot Monitoring	[Disabled] 5 minutes 10 minutes 15 minutes 20 minutes 25 minutes 30 minutes 35 minutes 40 minutes 45 minutes 50 minutes 55 minutes 60 minutes	Indicates whether the boot monitoring function is enabled or disabled and the timer value on booting. To use this function, install NEC ESMPRO Agent. Do not use this function if the system is booted from OS without installation of NEC ESMPRO Agent or CD-ROM. Set this item to "Disabled" if ARCServe uses the Disaster Recovery Option.	
Boot Monitoring Policy	[Retry 3 Times] Retry Service Boot Always Retest	This item indicates the processing at the occurrence of timeout during boot monitoring. If [Retry 3 times] is selected, the system is reset after the occurrence of timeout and OS boot is retried up to three times. The failure in the third boot causes the boot to be tried from the service partition*. If [Retry Service Boot] is selected, the system is reset after the occurrence of timeout and OS boot is retried up to three times. Then the boot is tried from the service partition for three times. The system halts if the system fails to boot from the service partition. If [Always Reset] is selected, the system is reset after the occurrence of timeout and OS boot is retried repeatedly. * If no service partition exists in the system, BIOS continues to bootup from the system partition.	

[ ]: Factory-set

The table below lists how selections for "AC-Link" determine the power status of the server when the power supply to the server restarts.

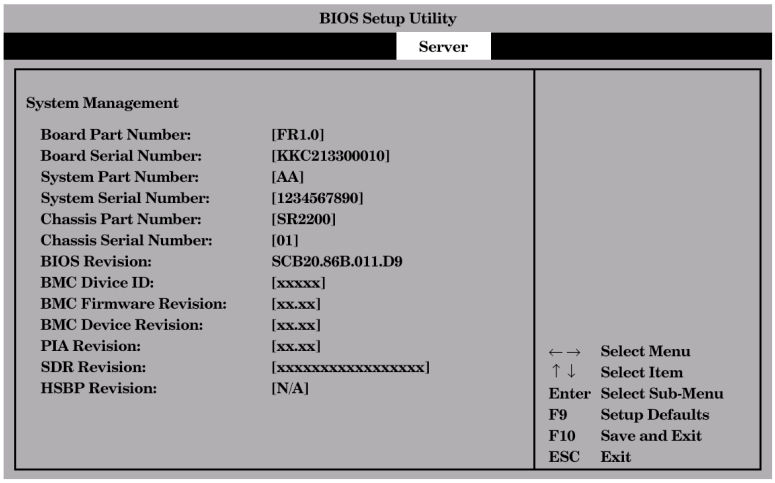
State before powered off	Parameter		
	Stays Off	**Last State**	**Power On**
In service	Off	On	On
Out of service (DC power: Off)	Off	Off	On
Forced shutdown *	Off	Off	On

* Pressing the POWER switch for at least four seconds shuts down the power to the server.

IMPORTANT: To power on the server from the UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply), select [Server] - [AC-Link] - [Power On].

System Management Submenu

Select "System Management" on the Server menu and press **Enter** to display the following screen.



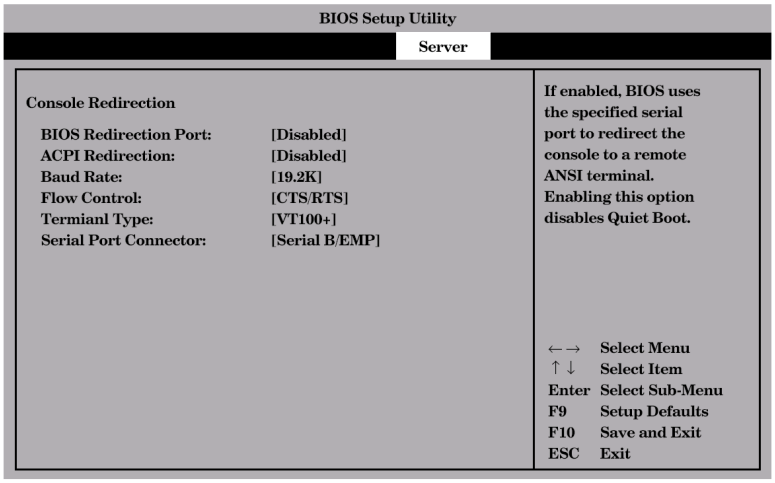
See the table below for setup options on the screen.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Board Part Number	–	Indicates the part number of mother board. (View only)	
Board Serial Number	–	Indicates the serial number of mother board. (View only)	
System Part Number	–	Indicates the system part number. (View only)	
System Serial Number	–	Indicates the serial number of system. (View only)	
Chassis Part Number	–	Indicates the part number of chassis. (View only)	
Chassis Serial Number	–	Indicates the serial number of chassis. (View only)	
BIOS Version	–	Indicates BIOS version number. (View only)	
BMC Device ID	–	Indicates the device ID of BMC (Baseboard Management Controller. (View only)	
BMC Firmware Revision	–	Indicates BMC (Baseboard Management Controller) firmware revision number. (View only)	
BMC Device Revision	–	Indicates BMC (Baseboard Management Controller) device revision number. (View only)	
PIA Revision	–	Indicates the revision of PIA (Platform Information Area). (View only)	
SDR Revision	–	Indicates the revision of SDR (Sensor Data Record). (View only)	
HSBP Revision	–	Indicates HSBP (Hot-Swap BackPlane) revision number. (View only)	

[ ]: Factory-set

Console Redirection

Select "Console Redirection" on the Server menu and press **Enter** to display the following screen.


BIOS Setup Utility
Server
Console Redirection
BIOS Redirection Port: [Disabled]
ACPI Redirection: [Disabled]
Baud Rate: [19.2K]
Flow Control: [CTS/RTS]
Termianl Type: [VT100+]
Serial Port Connector: [Serial B/EMP]
If enabled, BIOS uses the specified serial port to redirect the console to a remote ANSI terminal. Enabling this option disables Quiet Boot.
← → Select Menu
↑ ↓ Select Item
Enter Select Sub-Menu
F9 Setup Defaults
F10 Save and Exit
ESC Exit

See the table below for setup options on the screen.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
BIOS Redirection Port	[Disabled] Serial Port A (DB-9) Serial Port B (RJ45)	Specify the serial port to which a hardware console is connected.	
ACPI Redirection Port	[Disabled] Serial Port A (DB-9) Serial Port B (RJ45)	Specify the serial port to which an ACPI console is connected.	
Baud Rate	9600 [19.2k] 57.6k 115.2k	Selects a baud rate for communications with the connected HW console.	
Flow Control	No Flow Control [CTS/RTS] XON/XOFF CTS/RTS+CD	Select a flow control method.	
Terminal Type	[VT100+] VT-UTF8 PC ANSI	Specify the type of remote console.	
Serial Port Connection	Serial A [Serial B/EMP]	Select the RJ45 port at the front and rear panels as the serial port a or serial port B.	

[ ]: Factory-set

Event Log Configuration Submenu

Select "Event Log Configuration" on the Server menu and press **Enter** to display the following screen.

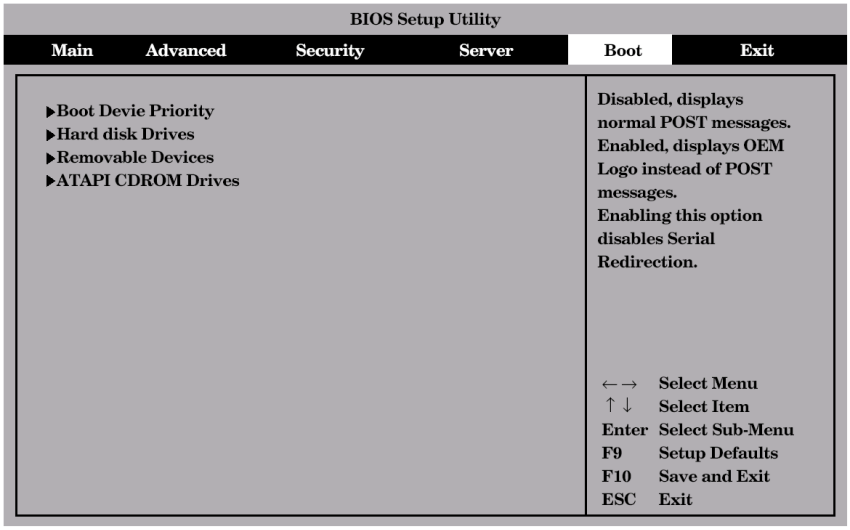
See the table below for setup options on the screen.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
Clear All Event Logs	[No] Yes	Clears the DMI event log after a system reboot.	

[ ]: Factory-set

Boot

Move the cursor onto "Boot" to display the Boot menu. Available options in the Boot menu and descriptions are described below. To make a selection for "Boot Device Priority", "Hard Drive", "Removable Devices", and "ATAPI CDROM Drives", first select a desired option and press **Enter** to display its submenu.



Boot Device Priority

The system searches for the boot device according to the order specified in this menu and use the software to boot the system if found.

Move the cursor to select the device by ↑ or ↓, and then change the priority using + or –.

IMPORTANT:

- To start the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER, specify "ATAPI CD-ROM Drive" to 1st Boot Device, and "Removable Devices" to 2nd Boot Device.
- The Slot 0339 (LAN port 1) has a higher priority than the Slot 0338 (LAN port 2). If the both LAN ports are connected to the same network, Slot 0339 must have a high priority than the Slot 0338.
- Changing the internal storage device configuration clears the current boot order.

Option	Parameter	Description	Your Setting
1st Boot Device	ATAPI CD-ROM	Attempts to boot from an ATAPI CD-ROM drive.	
2nd Boot Device	Removable Devices	Attempts to boot from a removable media device.	
3rd Boot Device	Hard Drive	Attempts to boot from a hard drive device.	
4th Boot Device	IBA 1.1.05 Slot 0339	Attempts to boot from a network devices connected to the LAN port 1 (PXE boot).	
5thBoot Device	IBA 1.1.05 Slot 0338	Attempts to boot from a network devices connected to the LAN port 2 (PXE boot).	

Hard Disk Submenu

Set the boot priority of hard disks being connected to the server. The system searches for the boot device according to the order specified in this submenu and use the software to boot the system if found.

Move the cursor to select the device by ↑ or ↓, and then change the priority using + or –.

Item	Description
1. Drive #1 (or actual drive name)	"Other bootable cards" cover all the boot devices not reported to the system BIOS through BIOS Boot Specification mechanisms. It may or may not be bootable, and may not correspond to any device.
2. Other bootable cards	

Removable Devices Submenu

Select the removable device used to boot the system. The system searches for the boot device according to the order specified in this submenu and use the software to boot the system if found.

Move the cursor to select the device by ↑ or ↓.

Item	Description
Lists Bootable Removable devices in the system.	Select one of the detected devices. This list includes legacy 1.44-MB floppy drives and 120-MB floppy drives.

ATAPI CD-ROM Drives Submenu

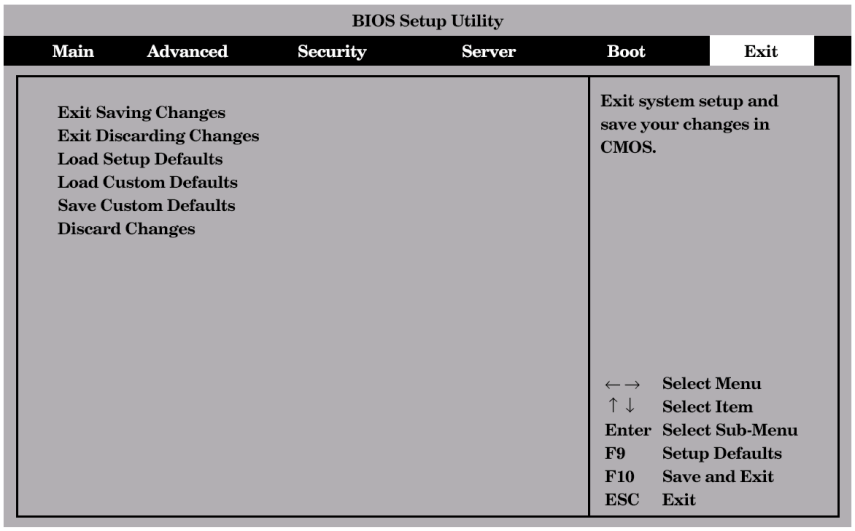
Select the CD-ROM drive used to boot the system. The system searches for the boot device according to the order specified in this submenu and use the software to boot the system if found.

Move the cursor to select the device by ↑ or ↓.

Item	Description
Lists Bootable Removable devices in the system.	Select one of the detected devices. This includes any ATAPI CD-ROM Drive installed.

Exit

Move the cursor onto "Exit" to display the Exit menu.



The following describes each option on the Exit menu:

- Exit Saving Changes

  Select this option to save the current configuration data into the CMOS (non-volatile memory) and exit the SETUP utility.

  Select "Yes" to save the current configuration data into the CMOS (non-volatile memory) and exit the SETUP utility. The server will automatically restart the system.

- Exit Discarding Changes

  Select this option to discard the current configuration data and exit the SETUP utility.

  Select "Yes" to discard the current configuration data and exit the SETUP utility, and restart the server automatically. Select "No" to return to Exit menu.

- Load Setup Defaults

  Select this option to resume all default values (BIOS default values) of the SETUP utility.

  Select "Yes" to resume default values. Select "No" to return to the Exit menu screen. If you resumed the default values, you need to change settings as described below to operate the system normally.

> **IMPORTANT:** The values of SETUP at the shipment may be different from their default values depending on the model of the server. It is necessary to set the values meeting the environment in which the server is used referring to the models.

- Load Custom Defaults

  Select this option and press **Enter** to load the custom defaults saved from previous Save Custom Defaults.

- Save Custom Defaults

  Select this option and press **Enter** to save the current configuration data as custom defaults. When the configuration is saved, the Load Custom Defaults menu appears.

- Discard Changes

  Select this option to discard any changes made to BIOS settings and restore the previous settings.

  Select "Yes" to discard the current settings.

SCSI BIOS ~ SCSI*Select* ~

The SCSI*Select* utility is provided to configure the SCSI controller on the mother board (or the SCSI controller on an optional board). This utility may be started with a simple key operation while POST is in progress and requires no specific start-up disk.

Using SCSI*Select* Utility

Use the SCSI*Select* utility mainly to set the transfer speed of connected SCSI devices. The SCSI devices include those installed in the 5.25-inch device bays and backup devices, such as an external DAT and MO, but not hard disks.

> **IMPORTANT:** SCSI configuration must be made on a per-SCSI controller basis with a utility. The server contains one SCSI controller. When you added optional SCSI controllers, you need to make configuration for each SCSI controller in addition to the standard internal SCSI controller. Some additional SCSI controllers may require a different utility to make changes to the configuration.

Configuring SCSI Controller on Mother Board

The following describes configuration for the SCSI controller on the mother board of the server.

Running the Utility

To run the utility, perform the following procedures:

1. Power on the Express server.

   The following message appears while POST is in progress.

   > **IMPORTANT:** The message appears for each additional SCSI controller.

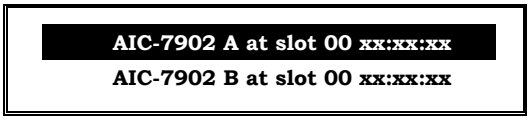
   ```
   Adaptec SCSI BIOS vX.XXX
   (c) 2003 Adaptec, Inc. All Rights Reserved

   ◀ ◀ ◀ Press <Ctrl> <A> for SCSISelect(TM) Utility! ▶ ▶ ▶
   ```

2. Press and hold **Ctrl** and **A**.

   The SCSI*Select* utility starts and its Main menu appears.

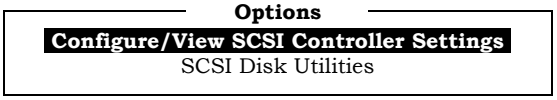
3. Select the channel with the cursor keys and press **Enter**.



The mother board is provided with two SCSI controller channels. Channel A (slot 00 04:07:00) indicates the Ultra 320 SCSI connector (for 5.25-inch devices and external SCSI devices); and Channel B (slot 00 04:07:01) indicates the Ultra 320 SCSI connector (for hard disks).

The Options menu appears.

4. Select "Option" and press **Enter**.



If you wish to format a disk, verify disk media, or display a list of devices and their SCSI Ids, select "SCSI Disk Utilities". If you wish to configure the adapter or a device, select "Configure/View SCSI Controller Settings".

Exiting the Utility

To exit the utility, press **Esc** until a message prompts you to exit (if you changed any setting, you are prompted to save the changes before you exit).

Configure/View SCSI Controller Settings

The Configure/View SCSI Controller Settings has the following menu items and parameters. Read descriptions to select a correct parameter for each menu item.

Configuration

```
SCSI Bus Interface Definitions
SCSI Controller ID----------------------------------------   7
SCSI Controller Parity ----------------------------------   Enabled
SCSI Controller Termination -----------------------------   Enabled

Additional Options
Boot Device Configuration -------------------------------   Press<Enter>
SCSI Device Configuration -------------------------------   Press<Enter>
Advanced Configuration ----------------------------------   Press<Enter>
HostRAID ------------------------------------------------   Disabled

<F6> - Reset to SCSI Controller Defaults
```

SCSI Bus Interface Definitions

Use **Esc** to return to the previous menu. Use the cursor keys (↓ or ↑) and **Enter** for submenu and parameter selection.

Menu item	Parameter	Description
SCSI Controller ID	0 - [7] - 15	Select "7".
SCSI Controller Checking	[Enabled] Disabled	Select "Enabled".
SCSI Controller Termination	[Enabled] Disabled	Enable or disable the SCSI termination. Select "Enabled".

[ ]: Factory-set

Additional Options

Use **Esc** to return to the previous menu. Use the cursor keys (↓ or ↑) and **Enter** for submenu and parameter selection.

■ Boot Device Configuration

Move the cursor onto "Boot Device Configuration" and press **Enter** to display the following submenu.

Boot Device Configuration

Single Image.
Master SCSI Controller ---------- AIC-7902 A at slot 00 04:07:00

■ SCSI Device Configuration

Move the cursor onto "SCSI Device Configuration" and press **Enter** to display the following submenu.

SCSI Device Configuration

SCSI Device ID	#0	#1	#2	#3	#4	#5	#6	#7
Sync Transfer Rate (MB/Sec)	320	320	320	320	320	320	320	320
Packetized	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
QAS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Initiate Wide Negotiation	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Enable Disconnection	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Send Start Unit Command	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
BIOS Multiple LUN Support	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Include in BIOS Scan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

SCSI Device ID	#8	#9	#10	#11	#12	#13	#14	#15
Sync Transfer Rate (MB/Sec)	320	320	320	320	320	320	320	320
Packetized	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
QAS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Initiate Wide Negotiation	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Enable Disconnection	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Send Start Unit Command	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
BIOS Multiple LUN Support	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Include in BIOS Scan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

The following table lists submenu items, available parameters, and descriptions.

IMPORTANT: Select a parameter for each submenu item on a per-SCSI ID basis. Verify the SCSI ID of a desired device before configuration.

NOTE: To find out the SCSI ID for the optional device connected, select "SCSI Disk Utilities" on the Options menu and press **Enter**. See "SCSI Disk Utilities" for detail.

■ Advanced Configuration

Move the cursor onto "Advanced Configuration" and press **Enter** to display the following submenu.

```
                    Advanced Configuration
  Reset SCSI Bus at IC Initialization---------------------------------------- Enabled
  Display <Ctrl><A> Message During BIOS Initialization ---------------------- Enabled
  Extended Int 13 Translation for DOS Drives > 1 GByte----------------------- Enabled
  POST Display Mode ---------------------------------------------------------- Verbose
  SCSI Controller Int 13 Support--------------------------------------------- Enabled

      Options Listed Below Have NO EFFECT if Int 13 Support is Disabled
  Domain Validation---------------------------------------------------------- Enabled
  Support Removable Disks Under Int 13 as Fixed Disks----------------------- Disabled
  BIOS Support for Bootable CD-ROM ------------------------------------------ Enabled
```

The following table lists submenu items, available parameter, and descriptions.

Submenu item	Parameter	Description
Reset SCSI Bus at IC Initialization	[Enabled] Disabled	Select "Enabled".
Display <Ctrl><A> Message During BIOS Initialization	[Enabled] Disabled	Select "Enabled".
Extended Int 13 Translation for DOS Drives > 1 GByte	[Enabled] Disabled	Select "Enabled".
POST Display Mode	[Verbose] Silent Diagnostic	Select "Diagnostic".
SCSI Controller Int 13 Support	[Enabled] Disabled: NOT Scan Disabled: scan bus	Enable or disable SCSI BIOS. Select "Enabled" for most cases other than the following: • To boot the OS from a hard disk connected to any other controller than SCSI controller. (If the controller has no hard disks connected, there is no problem.) • BIOS of the SCSI controller may be disabled to reserve an area in the expansion ROM space if the controller has no hard disks connected.
Domain Validation	[Enabled] Disabled	Select "Enabled".
Support Removable Disks under Int 13 as Fixed Disks	Boot Only All Disks [Disabled]	AIC-79xx BIOS automatically controls the removable disks.
BIOS Support for Bootable CD-ROM	[Enabled] Disabled	Select "Enabled".

[ ]: Factory-set

■ HostRAID

This system does not support HostRAID function. Always set to "Disabled".

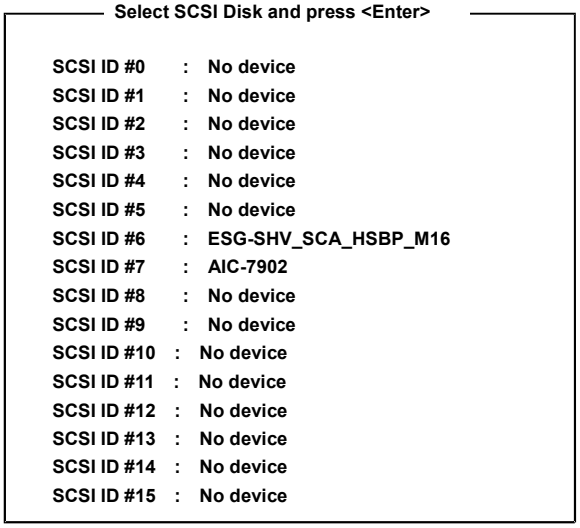
SCSI Disk Utilities

This utility scans the SCSI bus for SCSI devices, reports a description of each device. Run these utilities before configuring SCSI devices.

To enter the utility, select "SCSI Disk Utilities" on the Options menu.

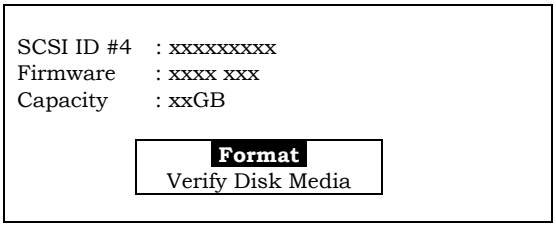
The SCSI ID scan begins displaying the message as shown below.

When the SCSI ID scan completes, the screen listing SCSI IDs and associated devices appears.


Select SCSI Disk and press <Enter>
SCSI ID #0 : No device
SCSI ID #1 : No device
SCSI ID #2 : No device
SCSI ID #3 : No device
SCSI ID #4 : No device
SCSI ID #5 : No device
SCSI ID #6 : ESG-SHV_SCA_HSBP_M16
SCSI ID #7 : AIC-7902
SCSI ID #8 : No device
SCSI ID #9 : No device
SCSI ID #10 : No device
SCSI ID #11 : No device
SCSI ID #12 : No device
SCSI ID #13 : No device
SCSI ID #14 : No device
SCSI ID #15 : No device

Find out the SCSI ID for the installed optional on this screen. You can also view the device information by selecting a device and pressing **Enter**.

The following sub menu appears.



The following table lists submenu items and descriptions.

Submenu item	Description
Format	Formats the selected device in the raw level.
Verify Disk Media	Verifies all the sectors in the selected device. If one or more bad sectors are found, reassigns the sectors.

Configuring SCSI Controller on Optional Board

To configure SCSI devices connected to an optional SCSI controller board, use the SCSI BIOS utility provided with the optional SCSI controller board.

Refer to the manual that comes with the optional SCSI controller board for details.

When the server has multiple SCSI controller boards installed, the server first displays the start-up message of the SCSISelect utility for the SCSI controller on the mother board. It then displays the utility start-up message for additional SCSI controllers one by one. The start-up message appears in order of the PCI board slot numbers of the riser card for low-profile type and the riser card for full-height type. The message displayed may vary depending on the optional SCSI controller board. Refer to the manual that comes with the optional SCSI controller board for details.

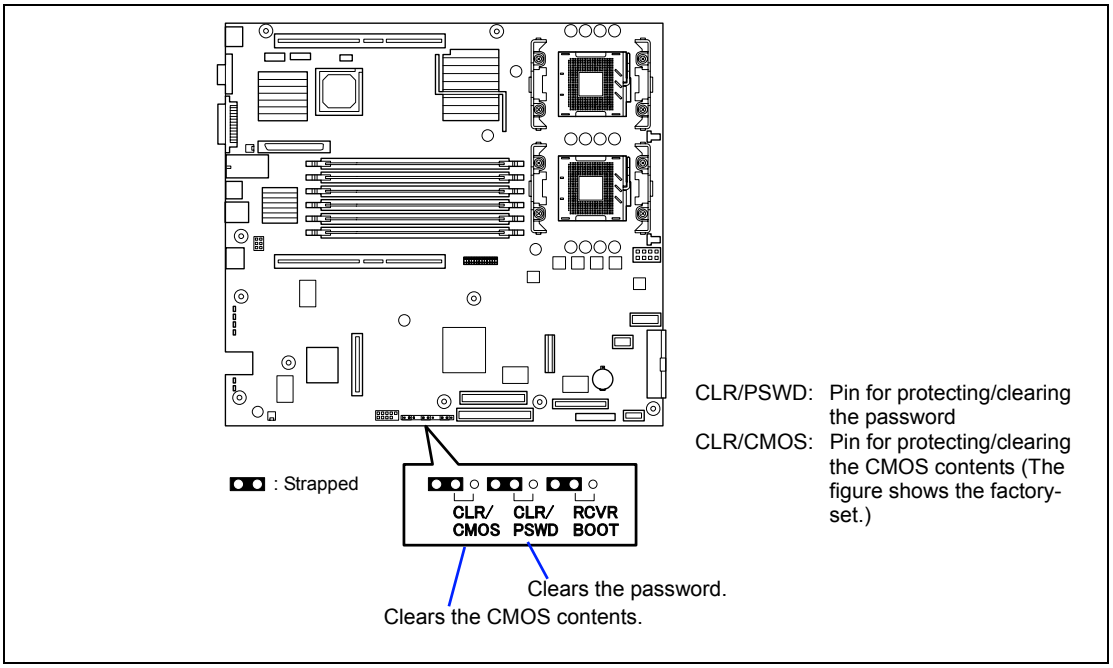
CONFIGURING MOTHER BOARD JUMPERS

With the pre-installed SETUP utility, you can set desired passwords to protect the data stored in the server against access from unauthorized users. When you forget the passwords, however, you may want clear them. The following describes how to clear these passwords. You can also use the following procedure to clear the CMOS data in the server.

IMPORTANT: Clearing the CMOS data resumes the factory-set configuration data.

To clear passwords or the CMOS data, use the jumper switch on the mother board of the server. The following figure illustrates the jumper switch location.

IMPORTANT: Do not change any other switch settings. Any change may cause the server to fail or malfunction.


: Strapped
CLR/ CMOS
CLR/ PSWD
RCVR BOOT
Clears the password.
Clears the CMOS contents.
CLR/PSWD: Pin for protecting/clearing the password
CLR/CMOS: Pin for protecting/clearing the CMOS contents (The figure shows the factory-set.)

The following describe the clearing procedure.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may result in death or serious personal injury. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not disassemble, repair, or alter the server.
- Do not remove the lithium battery.
- Do not connect the ground line to a gas pipe.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may result in death or serious personal injury. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not lift the server only by a single person.
- Make sure to complete board installation.
- Do not install the server on a rack with leaving covers removed.
- Do not pinch your finger with mechanical components.
- Note high temperature.
- Do not pull out a device from the rack if the rack is unstable.
- Do not leave more than one device being pulled out from the rack.

1. See the section "Preparing for Installation and Removal" in Chapter 9 to prepare.
2. Pull out the server from the rack.
3. Open the top cover.
4. Change the setting of the jumper switch of the target function to clear (PSWD or CMOS Clear).

   IMPORTANT: Be careful not to lose the clip.

5. Assemble the server as it was, and press the POWER switch.

   The following messages are displayed at completion of POST:

```
ERROR:
0120: NVRAM cleared By jumper

Press <F1> to Resume, Press <F2> to run SETUP.
```

6. Press the **F2** key to activate the SETUP utility.
7. Select [Exit Saving Changes] from the [Exit] menu, and then [Yes].
8. Wait until the message "Turn off power and reinstall the jumper in Normal mode position" appears.
9. Turn off the system power switch.
10. Change the jumper switch setting back to the original, turn on the power, and then define the setting by using the BIOS SETUP utility.

Chapter 5

Installing the Operating System with Express Setup

This section describes information on using Express Setup to install and configure the following operating systems to the server.

- Microsoft® Windows® Server 2003
- Microsoft® Windows® 2000

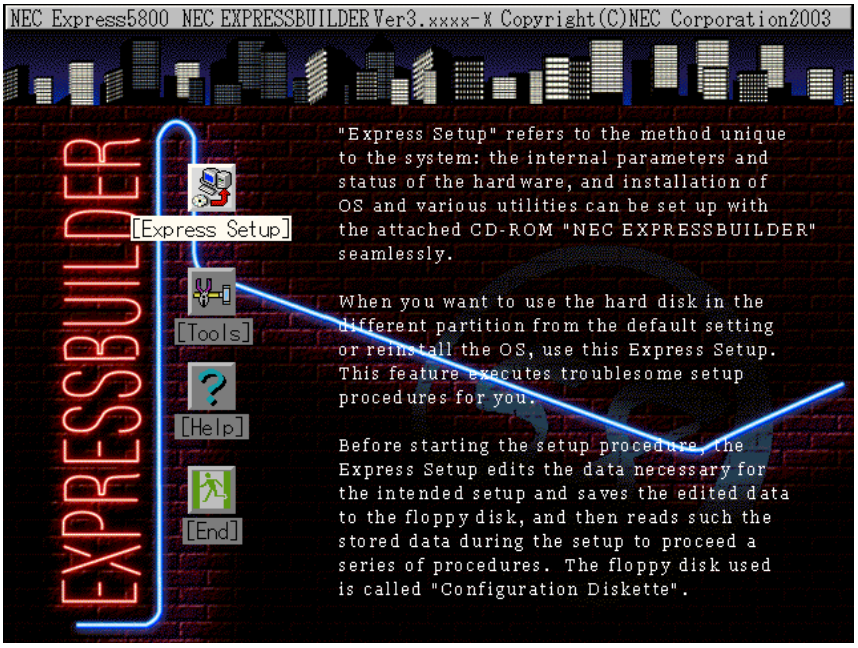
To use the server with the other operating systems described in this section, contact your service representative.

> **IMPORTANT:** Before installing the operating system, adjust the system date and time by using the BIOS set up utility "SETUP." See Chapter 4 for detail.

About Express Setup

"Express Setup" contained in your NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM is intended for initial setup of the server. Its automatic installation mode guides the user easily through the process by detailing specific hardware features and providing screen prompts for software selection and configuration. The program loads the utilities and drivers, applies RAID settings, partitions the disk, and installs the desired operating system.

IMPORTANT: Express Setup is intended for the initial setup of the server system. Therefore, it clears the contents of the hard disk.


NEC Express5800 NEC EXPRESSBUILDER Ver3.xxxx-X Copyright(C)NEC Corporation2003
EXPRESSBUILDER
[Express Setup]
[Tools]
[Help]
[End]
"Express Setup" refers to the method unique to the system: the internal parameters and status of the hardware, and installation of OS and various utilities can be set up with the attached CD-ROM "NEC EXPRESSBUILDER" seamlessly.
When you want to use the hard disk in the different partition from the default setting or reinstall the OS, use this Express Setup. This feature executes troublesome setup procedures for you.
Before starting the setup procedure, the Express Setup edits the data necessary for the intended setup and saves the edited data to the floppy disk, and then reads such the stored data during the setup to proceed a series of procedures. The floppy disk used is called "Configuration Diskette".

For Microsoft Windows Server 2003 and Windows 2000, Express Setup automatically configures your server and installs the operating system. After a few tasks are completed, all that remains to be done is to remove the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and set the Windows CD-ROM, input a product ID number, and acknowledge the license agreement.

For the other operating systems, Express Setup initializes the target disk(s), creates the maintenance partition, and installs the various maintenance utilities from the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM to lead your server to ready-to-install for the desired operating system.

Express Setup uses "Configuration Diskette". The Configuration Diskette is a floppy disk that includes the configuration information for the server setup used in the automatic installation mode. Express Setup will perform all the process of the setup using the information in the floppy disk. During this procedure, you do not have to be in front of the Express server to confirm the state of the setup. Also, using the same Configuration Diskette used before allows you to re-setup your server with the same condition as before.

Express Setup includes two types of installation method.

- Quick start

  Quick start uses the Configuration Diskette that the configuration parameters for server setup are pre-loaded before starting the Express Setup. The configuration parameters are loaded by using the Configuration Diskette Creator (see Chapter 6).

- Normal start

  Normal start is to create the Configuration Diskette after starting the Express Setup.

NOTES:

- Use the blank disk in the accessory box to create Configuration Diskette.
- You can create Configuration Diskette in advance using "Configuration Diskette Creator" included in NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.
- If you create Configuration Diskette in advance, you can abbreviate the items that is necessary to input or select during Express Setup. (You can also create or modify the setup information restored in Configuration Diskette during Express Setup.) If you have a computer other than NEC Express servers that is running with Windows 95/98, Windows NT 3.51 or later, or Windows 2000/2003, we recommend you to edit setup information from the computer in advance using Configuration Diskette Creator.

For more information on how to create Configuration Diskette using Configuration Diskette Creator, see Chapter 6.

Microsoft Windows Server 2003

This subsection provides information on installing Microsoft® Windows® Server 2003 in the server. Read instruction in this section before proceeding the installation.

> **NOTE:** If you install Windows Server 2003 without using Express Setup, see Appendix D.

Installation Notice

This section explains precautions and matters you should be aware of before beginning installation in order to install Windows Server 2003 correctly.

Supported OS on this model

The server supports the following edition:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition (Described as "Windows Server 2003" from now on.)
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition (Described as "Windows Server 2003" from now on.)

On installing other OS, contact sales dealer or the maintenance service representative.

Installing Optional Mass Storage Driver

To install optional mass storage driver, see "Installing Optional Mass Storage Driver" of "Configuration Diskette Creator" in Chapter 6 to create setup inf file.

BIOS Specification

Before installing Windows Server 2003, confirm if the BIOS specification of the hardware is correct. See Chapter 4 to specify them.

Windows Server 2003

Express Setup can install Windows Server 2003 operating system. However, note the following issue:

IMPORTANT:

- Before starting the installation, complete all the process of adding the optional device and the setup of Express server mainframe (BIOS and optional board specification)
- The document for installing Windows Server 2003 is also attached to the other software package which is sold separately from NEC, but refer to this document when you install Windows Server 2003 on this model.
- After completing Express Setup, see "Setup for Solving Problems" described later to specify the settings for trouble recovery such as "Specifying Memory Dump".

Installing on the Mirrored Volume

If you want to install Windows Server 2003 on the volume that is mirrored using "Disk Management", invalid the mirroring before operating the installation to set back to the basic disk, and valid the mirroring again after the installation has completed.

Creating, invalid, delete mirror volume can be operated from "Disk Management" in "Computer Management".

Connecting MO Device

If you operate installing Windows Server 2003 with MO device connected, the installation may not be completed normally. In such case, detach MO device and then re-install the system from the beginning.

Connecting Hard Disk

Connect the hard disk that OS is not going to be installed after installing OS.

Creating Partition Size

The minimum size for the partition that the system is to be installed can be calculated from the following formula.

2900MB + Paging File Size + Dump File Size

2900MB	= Size necessary to install the system
Paging File Size (Recommended)	= Installed Memory Size × 1.5
Dump file Size	= Installed Memory Size + 12MB

IMPORTANT:

- The above paging file size is necessary for collecting debug information (memory dump). If you set the default value of paging file size smaller than the 'recommended' value, the accurate debug information (memory dump) may not be collected.
- The maximum paging file size which can be set on one partition is 4095MB. If the above paging file size exceeds 4095MB, specify 4095MB for the paging file size.
- The dump file size for the system with more than 2GB memory mounted is '2048MB + 12MB'.

For example, if the mounted memory size is 512MB, the minimally required partition size will be calculated by the above formula as follows:

2900MB + (512MB * 1.5) + (512MB + 12MB) = 4192MB

Re-installing to the hard disk which has been upgraded to Dynamic Disk

You cannot re-install Windows Server 2003 with the current partition of the hard disk upgraded to Dynamic Disk kept remained.

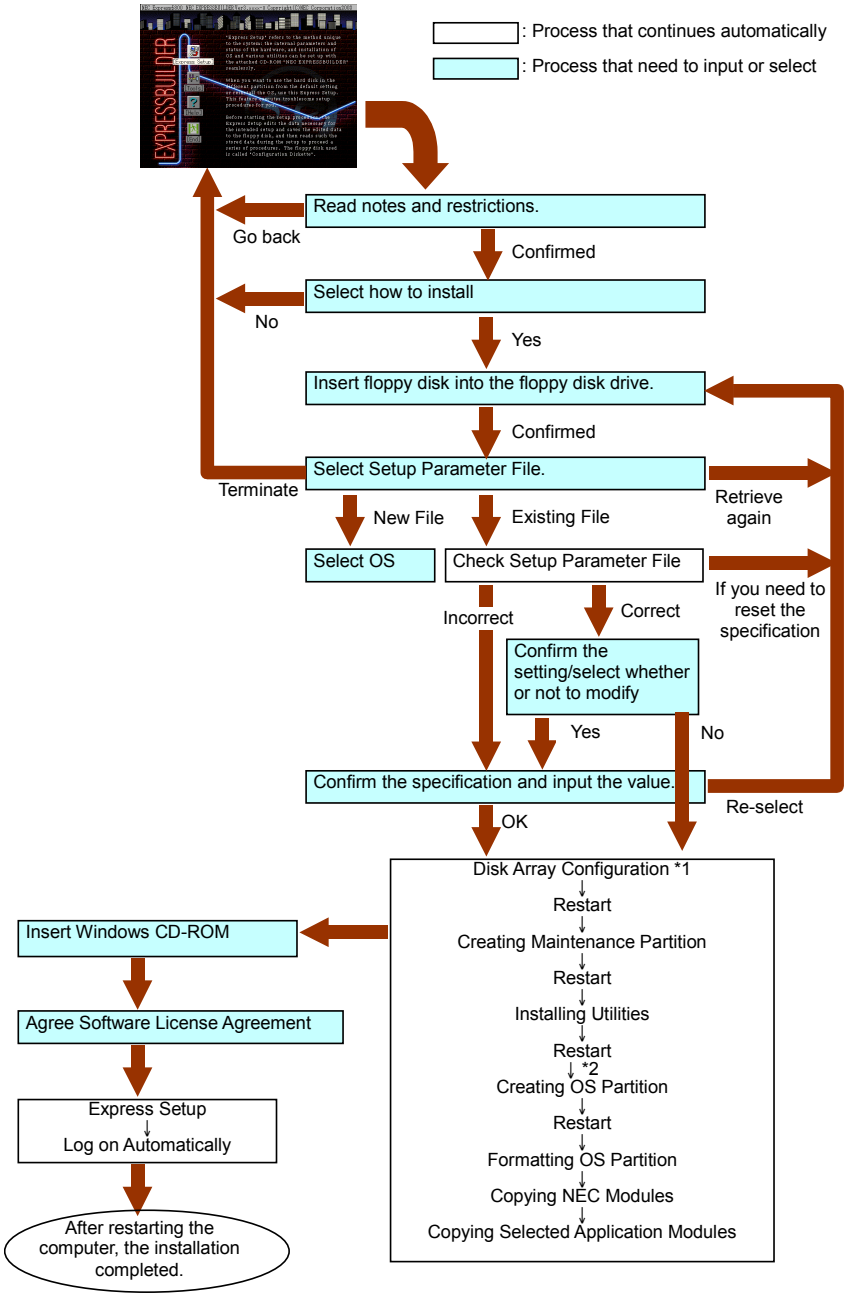
If you want to keep the current partition remained, see Appendix D to re-install the system.

Disk Configuration (Concerning the area displayed as "MAINTE_P")

In disk area, an area displayed as "MAINTE_P" may exist. This area is maintenance partition for saving configuration information and utilities. Do not delete the area.

The Flow of Setup

This section visually describes the flow of the setup operated by Express Setup.



*1 The process is operated only when Disk Array Controller Board is connected and the configuration is specified.

*2 If you select [Others], the process is completed here.

Installing the Windows Server 2003

This section describes on how to setup the system using Express Setup.

Prepare Configuration Diskette. You can operate the installation if you do not have Configuration Diskette specified in advance, but one floppy disk formatted by MS-DOS 1.44MB is necessary also in such case. For Configuration Diskette, use the blank disk in NEC EXPRESSBUILDER package or prepare other floppy disk personally.

IMPORTANT:

- If you modified the system configuration, execute "System Update".
- If you want to modify or add Graphics Accelerator Driver or the drivers of Network Adapter and so on, see Appendix D.

1. Turn the power of peripheral device on, and then turn on the server.
2. Insert NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the server.
3. Ensure that the floppy disk drive is empty.
4. Press the RESET switch or press **Ctrl**, **Alt**, and **Delete** to reboot from the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER. (You may also turn off and then on again to reboot the server.)

   The system will boot from the CD-ROM and NEC EXPRESSBUILDER starts.
5. Click [Express Setup].

   "Note" will be displayed.
6. Read the instruction carefully and click [OK].

   The message "Insert Configuration Diskette" appears.
7. Insert "Configuration Diskette" into floppy disk drive and click [OK].

NOTE: If you do not have "Configuration Diskette", insert a blank floppy disk formatted by 1.44MB into the floppy disk drive and click [OK].

[Using the specified Configuration Diskette]

The Setup File included in "Configuration Diskette" will be displayed.

1) Select the Setup File name to use during the installation.

NOTE: If there is any problem that can not be modified in the Setup File you selected, the message to set another "Configuration Diskette" appears. In such case, confirm the floppy disk you inserted.

After the Setup File is specified, the message "Do you want to review or modify the Setup File parameters?" is displayed.

2) If you want to edit the information file, click [Review]. If you do not want to edit the information file and continue the installation, click [Skip].

Click [Review] → Go to step 8.

Click [Skip] → Go to step 9.

[Using Blank disk]

1) Click the box under [Setup File Name: (A)] or press **A**.

The input box appears.

2) Input the file name.

[Operating System to Install] appears.

The OS supported by the computer is displayed in the list.

3) Select [Windows Server 2003] you want to install from the list box.

8. Confirm the contents specified during OS installation.

If Disk Array Controller Board is connected to Express server mainframe, the [Configure RAID] screen appears. Confirm the specification, modify if necessary, and then click [Next].

Next, [Basic Information] screen appears. Confirm the specification, modify if necessary, and then click [Next]. ("Supported Computer" shown in the screen differs according to the model.)

After that, click [Next], [Back], or [Help] on the screen to continue. Modify the specification each time if necessary.

IMPORTANT:

- Reserve the partition to install the OS more than the minimally required size.
- If you select "Use Existing Array" at "New/Existing RAID Configuration", the information included in the first partition (excluding maintenance partition) will all be formatted and deleted. The information included in the other partition will be retained. In the figure below, describes the partition which information will be deleted when maintenance partition exists.

First Partition <Maintenance Partition> Retained	Second Partition Deleted	Third Partition Retained	Fourth Partition Retained

- You can not re-install the system with the existing partition that is upgraded to Dynamic Disk remained. Do not select "Use Existing Array" at "New/Existing RAID Configuration".
- If "Create New Partition" at "New/Existing RAID Configuration" is selected, do not specify the value for the partition more than 120GB.
- If you specify other than 4095MB for the "Installing Partition", it is necessary to convert to NTFS.
- If "Use Existing Array" at "New/Existing RAID Configuration" is selected but the partition other than the one to install Windows Server 2003 does not exist (excluding maintenance partition), Express Setup will reserve the maximum area of the hard disk to install Windows Server 2003.
- You can not go to the next screen if the specification is incorrect.
- On specification, an error may occur in relationship with the specified contents of the former screen and require to go back to modify the specification.
- During the setup, the screen to specify the partition that Windows Server 2003 is to be installed appears. The first 55MB area displayed on the screen is a partition that is used to store the configuration information or utilities unique of the server. We do not recommend to delete this area, but if you do not want to reserve this 55MB area, perform the installation by manual setup. It is unable to delete this area by Express Setup.
- If you specify other than 120GB for the actual area, you may not create the partition specified as the entire area in sizes more than 120GB.

NOTES:

- If you click [Cancel] in [Basic Information] screen, the screen will go back to select the Setup File. [Cancel] exists only in [Basic Information] screen.
- If you click [OK] in [Role of Computer] screen, the setup automatically selects default value for the later specification to continue the installation.

When all the specification has completed, the system reboots automatically.

9. Copy the modules for the optional mass storage driver.

If you want to install the optional mass storage driver, insert the floppy disk attached to mass storage driver into floppy disk driver and follow the message to operate the installation.

10. Follow the message and take NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and Configuration Diskette out of CD-ROM drive, and insert Windows Server 2003 CD-ROM into CD-ROM drive.

[Software License Agreement] screen appears.

11. Read the contents carefully and click [I agree.] or press **F8** if you do agree. If you do not agree, click [I disagree] or press **F3**.

IMPORTANT:

- If you do not agree to this agreement, the setup terminates and Windows Server 2003 will not be installed.
- If "NetWare Gateway (and Client) Service" is specified to install, the window to specify the details of "NetWare Gateway (and Client) Service" pops up on the first logon. Specify the appropriate value.

Installing and Setting Device Drivers

Follow these steps to install and configure the device drivers.

PROSet

PROSet is a utility that confirms the function of network contained in network driver.

Utilizing PROSet enables the following items:

- Confirm detailed information of the adapter.
- Diagnose loop back test, packet transmission test and so on.
- Setup of teaming.

Configuring several network adapters as one team provides the server a tolerant environment on any trouble and enhance throughput between the switches.

PROSet is necessary to utilize these features.

Follow the procedure below to install PROSet.

1. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
2. The [Windows Explorer] dialog starts.

   * The procedure in the case of the standard start menu

     Click Start menu and click [Windows Explorer].

   * The procedure in the case of the classic start menu

     Click Start menu, point to [Programs], [Accessories] and click [Windows Explorer].
3. Run "PROSet.exe" in the following directory.

   CD-ROM DriveLetter:\WINNT\DOTNET\BC1\PROSet\WS03XP32

   The [Intel(R) PROSet - InstallShield Wizard] dialog starts.
4. Click [Next].
5. Choose "I accept the terms in the license agreement" and click [Next].
6. Choose "Typical" and click [Next].
7. Click [Install].
8. When [InstallShield Wizard Completed] window is displayed, click [Finish].
9. Restart the system.

Network Driver

Specify the details of network driver.

Two standard network drivers that are mounted will be installed automatically, but the link speed and Duplex mode need to be specified manually.

[When PROSet is not installed]

1. The [Local Area Connection Properties] dialog box appears.

   * The procedure in the case of the standard start menu

     1. Click Start menu, Click [Control Panel], Click [Network Connections], and Click [Local Area Connection].

   * The procedure in the case of the classic start menu

     1. Click Start menu, Click [Settings] and Click [Network Connections].

        The [Network Connections] dialog box appears.

     2. Right-click [Local Area Connection] and click [Properties] from pop-up menu.

2. Click [Configure].

   The property dialog box for network adapter appears.

3. Click the [Advanced] and specify the [Link Speed & Duplex] value the same as the value specified for HUB.

4. Click [OK] on the property dialog box for network adapter.

[When PROSet is installed]

1. The [Intel PROSet] dialog box appears.

   * The procedure in the case of the standard start menu

     1. Click Start menu, point to [Control Panel] and click [Intel PROSet].

   * The procedure in the case of the classic start menu

     1. Click Start menu, point to [Settings] and click [Control Panel].
     2. Double-click [Intel(R) PROSet] on the [Control Panel] window.

2. Click [(Network Adapter Name)] in the list.

3. Click the [Speed] and specify the [Link Speed & Duplex Settings] value the same as the value specified for HUB.

4. Click [Apply] and click [OK].

Specify the other network driver with the same progress above.

Also, add or delete any protocols and services if necessary.

You can operate the process on the property dialog box for local area network which can be appeared from [Network and Dial-up Connection].

NOTE: We recommend you to add [Network Monitor] at [Adding Services]. [Network Monitor] can monitor the frame (or the packet) that the computer installing [Network Monitor] sends or receives. This tool is valuable when analyzing network trouble. For information on how to install the tool, see the "Setting for Solving Problems" later in this document.

Optional Network Board Driver

If you want to utilize optional Network Board (N8104-103/104), the network driver will be installed automatically.

Therefore, the driver attached to the Network board should not be used.

If you want to utilize optional Network Board (N8104-80/86/88/111), install the driver stored in NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM.

In case of utilizing (N8104-80/86/88/111):

"CD-ROM Drive Letter:\WINNT\DOTNET\BC1\PRO100\WS03XP32"

If the procedure of installation is not clear, refer to the installation procedure described in the section "Installation of the Optional Network Board Driver".

IMPORTANT: If you want to utilize optional Network Board "N8104-103/104", open the [Advanced] in PROSet window and change the [Offload TCP Segmentation] value to "Off".

Installation of the Optional Network Board Driver

1. Start Device Manager.
2. Click [Network adapters] and double-click [(Network Adapter Name)].

   [(Network Adapter Name) Properties] appears.

   * [(Intel(R) PRO/1000~)] is the name of On-Board adapter.

   All other names show the Optional Network Board.
3. Click [Driver] tab and click [Update Driver...] button.

   [Hardware Update Wizard] appears.
4. Select the [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)] radio button and click [Next].
5. Select the [Search for the best driver in these locations] radio button and check off the [Search removable media (floppy, CD-ROM...)] check box.
6. Check the [Include this location in the search] check box and when using [(N8104-80/86/88/111)], specify

   [CD-ROM driveletter:\WINNT\DOTNET\BC1\PRO100\WS03XP32"

   Then click [Next].
7. Click [Finish].

Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT)/Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB)

Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT) is a feature that creates a group containing more than one adapter. With this feature, when the working adapter gets any problem, the process on it is automatically transferred to the other adapter in the group.

Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB) is a feature that creates a group containing more than one adapter and enhances the throughput by operating packet transmission from the server by all the adapters.

This feature includes AFT feature.

IMPORTANT:

- AFT/ALB setup must be operated after installing the drivers and restarting the system.
- The adapters specified as a group of Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT) can work, whether they are connected to same Hub or separated Hubs.
  But if they are connected to the separated Hubs, those Hubs must exist on the same LAN (Segment). Therefore, set the connection as cascade connection.
- The adapters specified as a group of Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB) can be connected to only Switching Hub.
  If you want to utilize AFT/ALB feature, follow the procedure below to setup.

1. The [Intel PROSet] dialog box appears.

   * The procedure in the case of the standard start menu

     Click Start menu, point to [Control Panel] and click [Intel PROSet].

   * The procedure in the case of the classic start menu

     1. Click Start menu, point to [Settings] and click [Control Panel].
     2. Double-click [Intel(R) PROSet] on the [Control Panel] window.

2. Put the mouse cursor on "(Network Adapter Name)" in the list and right-click. Pull-down menu appears.
3. Select [Add to Team>] and then click [Create New Team ...].
   The [Teaming Wizard] dialog box appears.
4. Select "Adapter Fault Tolerance" or "Adaptive Load Balancing" and click [Next].
5. Check the adapter to join the team and click [Next].
6. Click [Finish].
7. The setup will go back to [Intel(R) PROSet] dialog box, so click [OK].
8. Restart the system.

Setting for Solving Problems

Setup the following issue in advance so that your computer can recover from any trouble precisely and as soon as possible when it should occur.

Memory Dump (Debug Information)

This section describes the procedures for collecting memory dump (debug information) in the server.

IMPORTANT: Cautions for the Memory Dump

- The staff of maintenance service representative is in charge of collecting memory dump. Customers need only to specify the memory dump.
- If any trouble occur after specifying the process below, the message to inform that the system is in short of virtual memory may appear, but continue to start the system. If you re-start the system in such case, memory dump may not be stored correctly.

Follow the procedure below to specify.

1. Select [Control Panel] and click [System].

   The [System Properties] dialog box appears.

2. Select [Advanced] tab.

3. Click [Settings] on the [Startup and Recovery] group box.

IMPORTANT:

- To specify "Complete Memory Dump" to write the debug information is recommended. If the mounted memory size is larger than 2GB, "Complete Memory Dump" cannot be specified so that specify "Kernel Memory Dump" instead.
- Specify the drive where there is a free area more than the size of "the memory capacity mounted on Express sever + 12MB".
- In case the memory is expanded, the size of the debug information (memory dump) to be collected will differ. Confirm the amount of free area which the debug information (memory dump) is going to be written. Also, if the mounted memory size is larger than 2GB, the maximum size of the dump file is 2048MB. Take it in consideration that the necessary size of free space would be "2048MB+12MB".

4. Specify "Complete memory dump" and modify [Dump file:] in the [Write debugging information] group box.

   e.g. Write the debug information in D drive write the file name "MEMORY.DMP".
   D:\MEMORY.DMP

5. Click [Settings] on the [Performance] group box.

   The [Performance Options] window appears.

6. Click [Advanced] tab on the [Performance Options] window.

7. Click [Change] on the [Virtual memory] group box.

8. Modify [Initial Size] in the [Paging file size for selected drive] box to the value larger than [Recommended], and click [Set].

   IMPORTANT:

   - Be sure to create memory dump with the size described above on the OS partition. If [Default Size] of the paging file is specified to the value smaller than "Recommended" value, the correct debug information (memory dump) may not be collected.
   - For more information on "Recommended" value, see "Partition Size to be Created" described earlier.
   - To prepare for the situation when any trouble occurred, we recommend you to press dump switch to confirm that the dump will be collected normally in advance.
   - In case the memory is expanded, re-specify the paging file to suit the new memory size.

9. Click [OK].

   The message to restart the system may appear according to the modified specification. In such case, follow the message to restart the system.

Windows Dr. Watson

Windows Dr. Watson is a debugger for application errors. If any application error is detected,

Dr. Watson diagnoses the server and logs diagnostic information (log). Follow the procedure below and specify Dr. Watson to collect diagnostic information.

1. Click [Run] on Start menu.
2. Type "drwtsn32.exe" in the [Open] box, and click [OK].

   The [Dr. Watson for Windows] dialog box appears.
3. Specify the location to store the diagnostic information in the [Log File Path] box.

   The diagnostic information will be stored with the file name "DRWTSN32.LOG".

   NOTE: You can not specify network pass. Specify the pass on local computer.
4. Specify the location of crash dump file in the [Crash Dump] box.

   NOTE: "Crash Dump File" is a binary file that can be read with Windows Debugger.
5. Check the following check box on the [Option] box.

   ☐ Dump Symbol Table
   ☐ Dump All Thread Contexts
   ☐ Add To Existing Log File
   ☐ Create Crash Dump File

   For more information on each function above, refer to Online Help.
6. Click [OK].

Network Monitor

Utilizing Network Monitor helps you to investigate and manage with network trouble. To utilize Network Monitor, you need to restart the system after the installation has completed, so we recommend to install Network Monitor before any network trouble may occur.

1. Point to [Settings] from Start menu and click [Control Panel].

   The [Control Panel] dialog box appears.

2. Double-click [Add/Remove Programs].

   The [Add/Remove Programs] dialog box appears.

3. Click [Add/Remove Windows Component].

   The [Windows Components Wizard] dialog box appears.

4. Check the [Management and Monitoring Tools] check box of the component ON and click [Next].

5. If the setup asks to install the disk, insert Windows Server 2003 CD-ROM into CD-ROM drive and click [OK].

6. Click [Complete] in the [Windows Component Wizard] dialog box.

7. Click [Close] in the [Add/Remove Application] dialog box.

8. Close the [Control Panel] dialog box.

To start Network Monitor, point to [Program] → [Administrative Tools] and click [Network Monitor]. For information on how to operate Network Monitor, refer to Online Help.

Installing Maintenance Utilities

Various maintenance utilities are contained in your NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM. See Chapter 6 for installing the utilities to your server or management workstations.

Updating the System

Update the system in the situation below:

- CPU is expanded (expanded to single processor to multi-processor).
- Modified system configuration.
- Recovered the system using recovery process.

Log on to the system with the account that has administrative authority (e.g. Administrator) and insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the server.

[Setup Software] in [Master Control Menu] screen appears, so left-click the item. Click [Update the System] from the menu and the setup will start. After that, follow the message to continue the setup process.

Making Backup Copies of System Information

The system information includes the current BIOS settings and any specific information for the server.

Save the information after completing the system setup.

Without the backup data, you will not be able to recover the information.

You can save the information by the following process.

1. Set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and reboot the system.
2. Select [Tools].
3. Select [Off-line Maintenance Utility].
4. Select [System Information Management].
5. Set a floppy disk in the floppy disk drive.
6. Select [Save].

Exceptional Setup

This section explains how to setup with the exceptional way. You usually do not have to do as follows. The detailed information is provided by the manual of the Mass Storage Device.

Installation of Mass storage device not to be supported by ExpressSetup

If you would like to install or re-install the OS when the system has new mass storage device not to be supported by NEC EXPRESSBUILDER, you have to set as follows.

1. Read the manual supplied with the mass storage device before setting the server.
2. If the mass storage device is disk array controller, configure the RAID system before running the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.
3. Boot the system from NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM.
4. (a) When the dialog of Disk array configuration appears, check "Use Existing Array".

   (b) Check "Apply OEM-FD for Mass storage device".
5. Copy the driver for the mass storage device in the ExpressSetup.

   Set the FD attached the mass storage device to the FD drive.

   Continue the ExpressSetup, referring to messages displayed on the display.

Microsoft Windows 2000

This subsection provides information on installing Microsoft® Windows® 2000 in the server. Read instruction in this section before proceeding the installation.

> **NOTE:** If you install Windows 2000 without using Express Setup, see Appendix D.

Installation Notice

This section explains precautions and matters you should be aware of before beginning installation in order to install Windows 2000 correctly.

Supported OS on this model

The server supports the following edition:

- Microsoft Windows 2000 Server (Described as "Windows 2000" from now on.)
- Microsoft Windows 2000 Advanced Server version (Described as "Windows 2000" from now on.)

On installing other OS, contact sales dealer or the maintenance service representative.

Installing Optional Mass Storage Driver

To install optional mass storage driver, see "Installing Optional Mass Storage Driver" of "Configuration Diskette Creator" in Chapter 6 to create setup inf file.

BIOS Specification

Before installing Windows 2000, confirm if the BIOS specification of the hardware is correct. On BIOS specification, there are some items to specify for the new functions provided from Windows 2000 (Plug and Play, support for USB interface and so on). See Chapter 4 to specify them.

Windows 2000

Express Setup can install Windows 2000 operating system. However, note the following issue:

IMPORTANT:

- Before starting the installation, complete all the process of adding the optional device and the setup of Express server mainframe (BIOS and optional board specification)
- The document for installing Windows 2000 is also attached to the other software package which is sold separately from NEC, but refer to this document when you install Windows 2000 on this model.
- After completing Express Setup, see "Setup for Solving Problems" described later to specify the settings for trouble recovery such as "Specifying Memory Dump".

Installing on the Mirrored Volume

If you want to install Windows 2000 on the volume that is mirrored using "Disk Management", invalid the mirroring before operating the installation to set back to the basic disk, and valid the mirroring again after the installation has completed.

Creating, invalid, delete mirror volume can be operated from "Disk Management" in "Computer Management".

Connecting MO Device

If you operate installing Windows 2000 with MO device connected, the installation may not be completed normally. In such case, detach MO device and then re-install the system from the beginning.

Connecting Hard Disk

Connect the hard disk that OS is not going to be installed after installing OS.

Creating Partition Size

The minimum size for the partition that the system is to be installed can be calculated from the following formula.

1000MB + Paging File Size + Dump File Size

1000MB	= Size necessary to install the system
Paging File Size (Recommended)	= Installed Memory Size × 1.5
Dump file Size	= Installed Memory Size + 12MB

IMPORTANT:

- The above paging file size is necessary for collecting debug information (memory dump). If you set the default value of paging file size smaller than the 'recommended' value, the accurate debug information (memory dump) may not be collected.
- The maximum paging file size which can be set on one partition is 4095MB. If the above paging file size exceeds 4095MB, specify 4095MB for the paging file size.
- The dump file size for the system with more than 2GB memory mounted is '2048MB + 12MB'.

For example, if the mounted memory size is 512MB, the minimally required partition size will be calculated by the above formula as follows:

1000MB + (512MB * 1.5) + (512MB + 12MB) = 2292MB

NOTES:

If you want to install using Express Setup, calculate the minimally required partition size as follows:

- If you do not apply Windows 2000 Service Pack
  The larger value of either one: 'Minimum Partition Size' described above, or '4095MB'.
- If you want to apply Windows 2000 Service Pack
  The larger value of either one: 'Minimum Partition Size' described above + 850MB or '4095MB'.

Re-installing to the hard disk which has been upgraded to Dynamic Disk

You cannot re-install Windows 2000 with the current partition of the hard disk upgraded to Dynamic Disk kept remained.

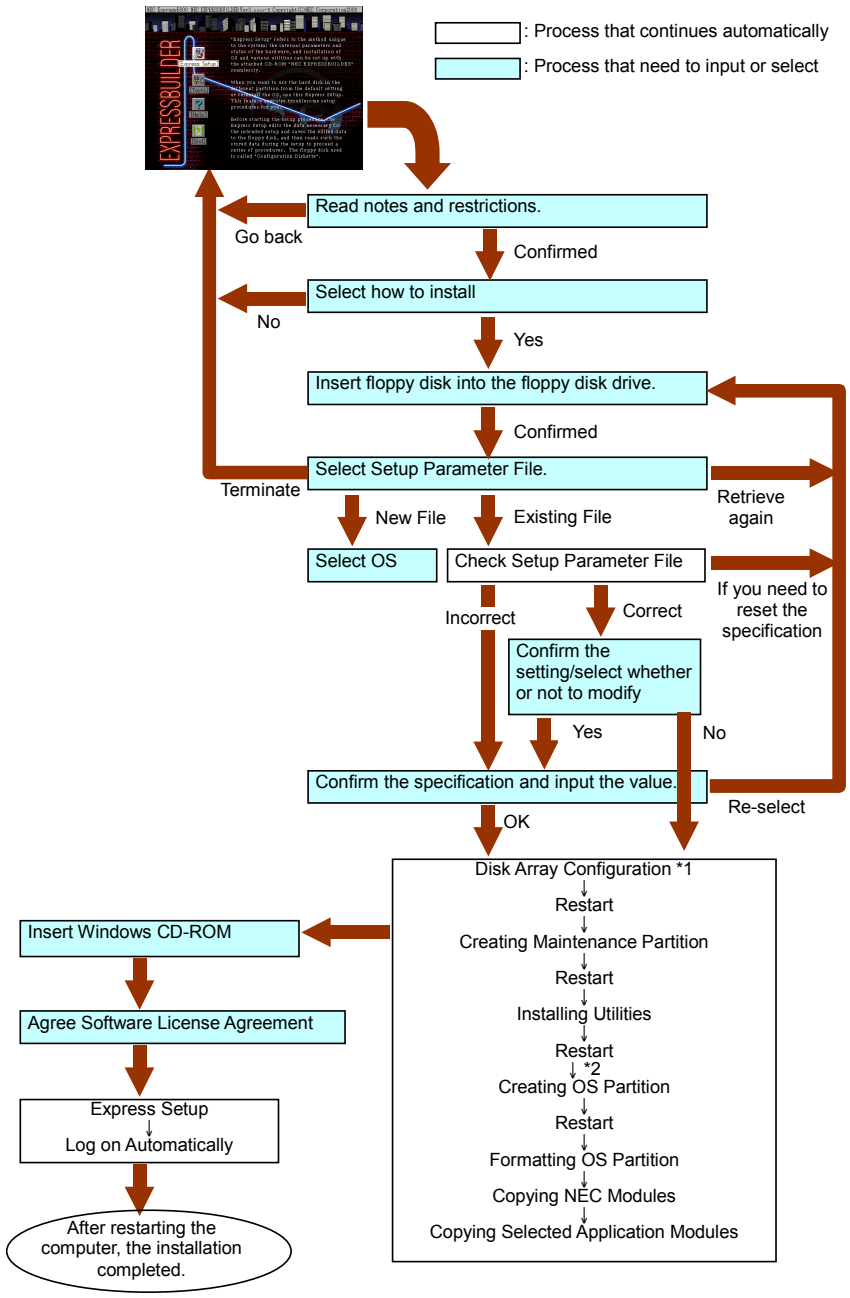
If you want to keep the current partition remained, see Appendix D to re-install the system.

Disk Configuration (Concerning the area displayed as "MAINTE_P")

In disk area, an area displayed as "MAINTE_P" may exist. This area is maintenance partition for saving configuration information and utilities. Do not delete the area.

The Flow of Setup

This section visually describes the flow of the setup operated by Express Setup.



*1 The process is operated only when Disk Array Controller Board is connected and the configuration is specified.

*2 If you select [Others], the process is completed here.

Installing the Windows 2000

This section describes on how to setup the system using Express Setup.

Prepare Configuration Diskette. You can operate the installation if you do not have Configuration Diskette specified in advance, but one floppy disk formatted by MS-DOS 1.44MB is necessary also in such case. For Configuration Diskette, use the blank disk in NEC EXPRESSBUILDER package or prepare other floppy disk personally.

IMPORTANT:

- If you modified the system configuration, execute "System Update".
- If you want to modify or add Graphics Accelerator Driver or the drivers of Network Adapter and so on, see Appendix D.

1. Turn the power of peripheral device on, and then turn on the server.
2. Insert NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the server.
3. Ensure that the floppy disk drive is empty.
4. Press the RESET switch or press **Ctrl**, **Alt**, and **Delete** to reboot from the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER. (You may also turn off and then on again to reboot the server.)

   The system will boot from the CD-ROM and NEC EXPRESSBUILDER starts.
5. Click [Express Setup].

   "Note" will be displayed.
6. Read the instruction carefully and click [OK].

   The message "Insert Configuration Diskette" appears.
7. Insert "Configuration Diskette" into floppy disk drive and click [OK].

NOTE: If you do not have "Configuration Diskette", insert a blank floppy disk formatted by 1.44MB into the floppy disk drive and click [OK].

[Using the specified Configuration Diskette]

The Setup File included in "Configuration Diskette" will be displayed.

1) Select the Setup File name to use during the installation.

NOTE: If there is any problem that can not be modified in the Setup File you selected, the message to set another "Configuration Diskette" appears. In such case, confirm the floppy disk you inserted.

After the Setup File is specified, the message "Do you want to review or modify the Setup File parameters?" is displayed.

2) If you want to edit the information file, click [Review]. If you do not want to edit the information file and continue the installation, click [Skip].

Click [Review] → Go to step 8.

Click [Skip] → Go to step 9.

[Using Blank disk]

1) Click the box under [Setup File Name: (A)] or press **A**.

The input box appears.

2) Input the file name.

[Operating System to Install] appears.

The OS supported by the computer is displayed in the list.

3) Select [Windows 2000] you want to install from the list box.

8. Confirm the contents specified during OS installation.

If Disk Array Controller Board is connected to Express server mainframe, the [Configure RAID] screen appears. Confirm the specification, modify if necessary, and then click [Next].

Next, [Basic Information] screen appears. Confirm the specification, modify if necessary, and then click [Next]. ("Supported Computer" shown in the screen differs according to the model.)

After that, click [Next], [Back], or [Help] on the screen to continue. Modify the specification each time if necessary.

IMPORTANT:

- Reserve the partition to install the OS more than the minimally required size.
- If you select "Use Existing Array" at "New/Existing RAID Configuration", the information included in the first partition (excluding maintenance partition) will all be formatted and deleted. The information included in the other partition will be retained. In the figure below, describes the partition which information will be deleted when maintenance partition exists.

First Partition <Maintenance Partition> Retained	Second Partition Deleted	Third Partition Retained	Fourth Partition Retained

- You can not re-install the system with the existing partition that is upgraded to Dynamic Disk remained. Do not select "Use Existing Array" at "New/Existing RAID Configuration".
- If "Create New Partition" at "New/Existing RAID Configuration" is selected, do not specify the value for the partition more than 120GB.
- If you specify other than 4095MB for the "Installing Partition", it is necessary to convert to NTFS.
- If "Use Existing Array" at "New/Existing RAID Configuration" is selected but the partition other than the one to install Windows 2000 does not exist (excluding maintenance partition), Express Setup will reserve the maximum area of the hard disk to install Windows 2000.
- You can not go to the next screen if the specification is incorrect.
- On specification, an error may occur in relationship with the specified contents of the former screen and require to go back to modify the specification.
- During the setup, the screen to specify the partition that Windows 2000 is to be installed appears. The first 16MB area displayed on the screen is a partition that is used to store the configuration information or utilities unique of the server. We do not recommend to delete this area, but if you do not want to reserve this 16MB area, perform the installation by manual setup. It is unable to delete this area by Express Setup.
- If you specify other than 120GB for the actual area, you may not create the partition specified as the entire area in sizes more than 120GB.

NOTES:

- If you click [Cancel] in [Basic Information] screen, the screen will go back to select the Setup File. [Cancel] exists only in [Basic Information] screen.
- If you click [OK] in [Role of Computer] screen, the setup automatically selects default value for the later specification to continue the installation.

When all the specification has completed, the system reboots automatically.

9. Copy the modules for the optional mass storage driver.

If you want to install the optional mass storage driver, insert the floppy disk attached to mass storage driver into floppy disk driver and follow the message to operate the installation.

10. Follow the message and take NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and Configuration Diskette out of CD-ROM drive, and insert Windows 2000 CD-ROM into CD-ROM drive.

[Software License Agreement] screen appears.

11. Read the contents carefully and click [I agree.] or press **F8** if you do agree. If you do not agree, click [I disagree] or press **F3**.

IMPORTANT:

- If you do not agree to this agreement, the setup terminates and Windows 2000 will not be installed.
- If "NetWare Gateway (and Client) Service" is specified to install, the window to specify the details of "NetWare Gateway (and Client) Service" pops up on the first logon. Specify the appropriate value.

12. If you selected [Apply] on [Apply Service Pack] at Basic Information, follow the procedure below.

1) Follow the message to take Windows 2000 CD-ROM out of CD-ROM drive.

2) Follow the message to insert Windows 2000 Service Pack 1 or later into CD-ROM drive.

Windows 2000 and the specified application will be installed automatically and logon to the system. Install and configure the device drivers.

Now the Setup using Express Setup has completed.

Installing and Setting Device Drivers

Follow these steps to install and configure the device drivers.

PROSetII

PROSetII is a utility that confirms the function of network contained in network driver. Be sure to install PROSetII for setting GigaEthernet. Utilizing PROSetII enables the following issues:

- Confirm detailed information of the adapter.
- Diagnose loop back test, packet transmission test and so on.
- Specify teaming.

Configuring several network adapters as one team provides the server an environment tolerant on any trouble and enhance throughput between the switches.

PROSetII is necessary to utilize these features.

Follow the procedure below to install PROSetII.

1. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Click Start menu, point to [Program], [Accessory] and click [Explorer].
3. Run "PROSET.MSI" in the following directory.

   <CD-ROM Drive Letter>:\WINNT\W2K\PC62C\HD1\WINDOWS\PROSET2\IA32\PROSET.MSI

   The [Intel(R) PROSetII - InstallShield Wizard] dialog starts.
4. Choose "I accept the terms in the license agreement" and click [Next].
5. Choose "Typical" and click [Next].
6. Click [Install].
7. When [InstallShield Wizard Completed] window is displayed, click [Finish].
8. Restart the system.

Network Driver

Specify the details of network driver.

Two standard network drivers that are mounted will be installed automatically, but the link speed and Duplex mode need to be specified manually.

1. Double-click [Intel(R) PROSet II] on the [Control Panel] window.

   The [Intel(R) PROSet II] dialog box appears.

2. Click [Intel(R) 82546EB Based Dual Port Network Connection] in the list.

3. Click [Link Config] and specify the Speed value & Duplex value according to the value specified for HUB.

4. Click [Intel(R) 82546EB Based Dual Port Network Connection #2] in the list.

5. Click [Link Config] and specify the Speed value & Duplex value according to the value specified for HUB.

6. Click [OK] on the [Intel(R)PROSetII] dialog box.

Also, add or delete any protocols and services if necessary. You can operate the process from [Network and Dial-up Connection] to display the property dialog box for local area network.

> **NOTE:** We recommend you to add [Network Monitor] at [Adding Services]. [Network Monitor] can monitor the frame (or the packet) that the computer installing [Network Monitor] sends or receives. This tool is valuable when analyzing network trouble. For information on how to install the tool, see the "Setting for Solving Problems" later in this chapter.

Optional Network Board Driver

If you want to utilize optional Network Board (N8104-80/86/88/111/103/104), confirm the versions of driver in EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and the version of driver attached to the Network board.

CD-ROM Drive Letter:\WINNT\W2K\PC62C\FD1\e1000nt5.sys e100bnt5.sys

If the driver attached to the Network board is old, install the driver stored in NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM.

Refer to the re-installation procedure described (Appendix E).

Network Driver for (N8104-80/86/88/111/103/104)

[CD-ROM Drive Letter:\WINNT\W2K\PC62C\FD1]

Graphics Accelerator Driver

Update Graphics Accelerator Driver mounted in standard.

If you want to utilize optional Graphics Accelerator Driver board, follow the document attached to the board to install the driver.

1. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Click Start menu, point to [Programs], [Accessories] and click [Windows Explorer].
3. Run "Setup.exe" in the following directory.

   <CD-ROM Drive Letter>:\WINNT\VIDEO\W2K\setup.exe.
4. Follow the message to continue the installation.

   If the dialog message "Digital Signature could not been found." appears, select [Yes] to continue.
5. Remove the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive, follow the direction on the screen and restart the system.

Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT)/Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB)

Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT) is a feature that creates a group containing more than one adapter and automatically converts the process of the working adapter to the other adapter in the group when any trouble occurred on that adapter.

Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB) is a feature that creates a group containing more than one adapter and enhance the through put by operating packet transmission from the server by all the adapters.

This feature includes AFT feature.

IMPORTANT:

- AFT/ALB setup must be operated after installing the drivers and restarting the system.
- The adapters specified as a group of Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT) can work, whether they are connected to same Hub or separated Hubs.
  But if they are connected to the separated Hubs, those Hubs must exist on the same LAN (Segment). Therefore, set the connection as cascade connection.
- The adapters specified as a group of Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB) can be connected to only Switching Hub.

If you want to utilize AFT/ALB feature, follow the procedure below to setup.

1. Double-click [Intel (R) PROSet II] on the [Control Panel] dialog box.

   The [Intel (R) PROSet II] dialog box appears.

2. Put the mouse cursor on "Intel(R)82546EB Based Dual Port Network Connection" in the list and right-click. Pull-down menu appears.

3. Select [Add to Team>] and then click [Create New Team...].

   The [Teaming Wizard] dialog box appears.

4. Select "Adapter Fault Tolerance" or "Adaptive Load Balancing" and click [Next].

5. Check the adapter to join the team and click [Next].

6. Click [Finish].

7. The setup will go back to [Intel (R) PROSet II] dialog box, so click [OK].

8. Restart the system.

Setting for Solving Problems

Setup the following issue in advance so that your computer can recover from any trouble precisely and as soon as possible when it should occur.

Memory Dump (Debug Information)

This section describes the procedures for collecting memory dump (debug information) in the server.

IMPORTANT: Cautions for the Memory Dump

- The staff of maintenance service representative is in charge of collecting memory dump. Customers need only to specify the memory dump.
- If any trouble occur after specifying the process below, the message to inform that the system is in short of virtual memory may appear, but continue to start the system. If you re-start the system in such case, memory dump may not be stored correctly.

Follow the procedure below to specify.

1. Point to [Settings] in Start menu and click [Control Panel].

   The [Control Panel] dialog box appears.

2. Double-click [System].

   The [System Properties] dialog box appears.

3. Click [Advanced].

4. Click [Startup and Recovery].

5. Enter the location to write the debug information to the text box.

   e.g. Write the debug information in D drive with the file name "MEMORY.DMP".

   D:\MEMORY.DMP

IMPORTANT:

- Specify "Kernel Memory Dump" to write the debug information.
- Specify the drive where there is a free area more than the size of "the memory capacity mounted on Express sever + 12MB".
- In case the memory is expanded, the size of the debug information (memory dump) to be collected will differ. Confirm the amount of free area which the debug information (memory dump) is going to be written. Also, if the mounted memory size is larger than 2GB, the maximum size of the dump file is 2048MB. Take it in consideration that the necessary size of free space would be "2048MB+12MB".

6. Click [Performance Options].
7. Click [Change] on the [Virtual Memory] dialog box.
8. Modify [Initial Size] in the [Paging File Size for Selected Drive] box to the value larger than [Recommended Size], and click [Specify].

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to create memory dump with the size described above on the OS partition. If [Default Size] of the paging file is specified to the value smaller than "Recommended" value, the correct debug information (memory dump) may not be collected.
- For more information on "Recommended" value, see "Partition Size to be Created" described earlier.
- To prepare for the situation when any trouble occurred, we recommend you to press dump switch to confirm that the dump will be collected normally in advance.
- In case the memory is expanded, re-specify the paging file to suit the new memory size.

9. Click [OK].

   The message to restart the system may appear according to the modified specification. In such case, follow the message to restart the system.

Windows 2000 Dr. Watson

Windows 2000 Dr. Watson is a debugger for application errors. If any application error is detected,

Dr. Watson diagnoses the server and logs diagnostic information (log). Follow the procedure below and specify Dr. Watson to collect diagnostic information.

1. Click [Run] on Start menu.
2. Type "drwtsn32.exe" in the [Open] box, and click [OK].

   The [Dr. Watson for Windows 2000] dialog box appears.
3. Specify the location to store the diagnostic information in the [Log File Path] box.

   The diagnostic information will be stored with the file name "DRWTSN32.LOG".

   NOTE: You can not specify network pass. Specify the pass on local computer.
4. Specify the location of crash dump file in the [Crash Dump] box.

   NOTE: "Crash Dump File" is a binary file that can be read with Windows Debugger.
5. Check the following check box on the [Option] box.

   ☐ Dump Symbol Table
   ☐ Dump All Thread Contexts
   ☐ Add To Existing Log File
   ☐ Create Crash Dump File

   For more information on each function above, refer to Online Help.
6. Click [OK].

Network Monitor

Utilizing Network Monitor helps you to investigate and manage with network trouble. To utilize Network Monitor, you need to restart the system after the installation has completed, so we recommend to install Network Monitor before any network trouble may occur.

1. Point to [Settings] from Start menu and click [Control Panel].

   The [Control Panel] dialog box appears.

2. Double-click [Add/Remove Programs].

   The [Add/Remove Programs] dialog box appears.

3. Click [Add/Remove Windows Component].

   The [Windows Components Wizard] dialog box appears.

4. Check the [Management and Monitoring Tools] check box of the component ON and click [Next].

5. If the setup asks to install the disk, insert Windows 2000 CD-ROM into CD-ROM drive and click [OK].

6. Click [Complete] in the [Windows Component Wizard] dialog box.

7. Click [Close] in the [Add/Remove Application] dialog box.

8. Close the [Control Panel] dialog box.

To start Network Monitor, point to [Program] → [Administrative Tools] and click [Network Monitor]. For information on how to operate Network Monitor, refer to Online Help.

Installing Maintenance Utilities

Various maintenance utilities are contained in your NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM. See Chapter 6 for installing the utilities to your server or management workstations.

Updating the System - Installing Service Pack -

Update the system in the situation below:

- CPU is expanded (expanded to single processor to multi-processor).
- Modified system configuration.
- Recovered the system using recovery process.

Log on to the system with the account that has administrative authority (e.g. Administrator) and insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the server.

[Setup Software] in [Master Control Menu] screen appears, so left-click the item. Click [Update the System] from the menu and the setup will start. After that, follow the message to continue the setup process and install Service Pack.

Making Backup Copies of System Information

The system information includes the current BIOS settings and any specific information for the server.

Save the information after completing the system setup.

Without the backup data, you will not be able to recover the information.

You can save the information by the following process.

1. Set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and reboot the system.
2. Select [Tools].
3. Select [Off-line Maintenance Utility].
4. Select [System Information Management].
5. Set a floppy disk in the floppy disk drive.
6. Select [Save].

Exceptional Setup

This section explains how to setup with the exceptional way. You usually do not have to do as follows. The detailed information is provided by the manual of the Mass Storage Device.

Installation of Mass storage device not to be supported by ExpressSetup

If you would like to install or re-install the OS when the system has new mass storage device not to be supported by NEC EXPRESSBUILDER, you have to set as follows.

1. Read the manual supplied with the mass storage device before setting the server.
2. If the mass storage device is disk array controller, configure the RAID system before running the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.
3. Boot the system from NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM.
4. (a) When the dialog of Disk array configuration appears, check "Use Existing Array".

   (b) Check "Apply OEM-FD for Mass storage device".
5. Copy the driver for the mass storage device in the ExpressSetup.

   Set the FD attached the mass storage device to the FD drive.

   Continue the ExpressSetup, referring to messages displayed on the display.

Chapter 6

Installing and Using Utilities

This section describes how to use the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM that comes with your server and to install the utilities stored on the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

NEC EXPRESSBUILDER

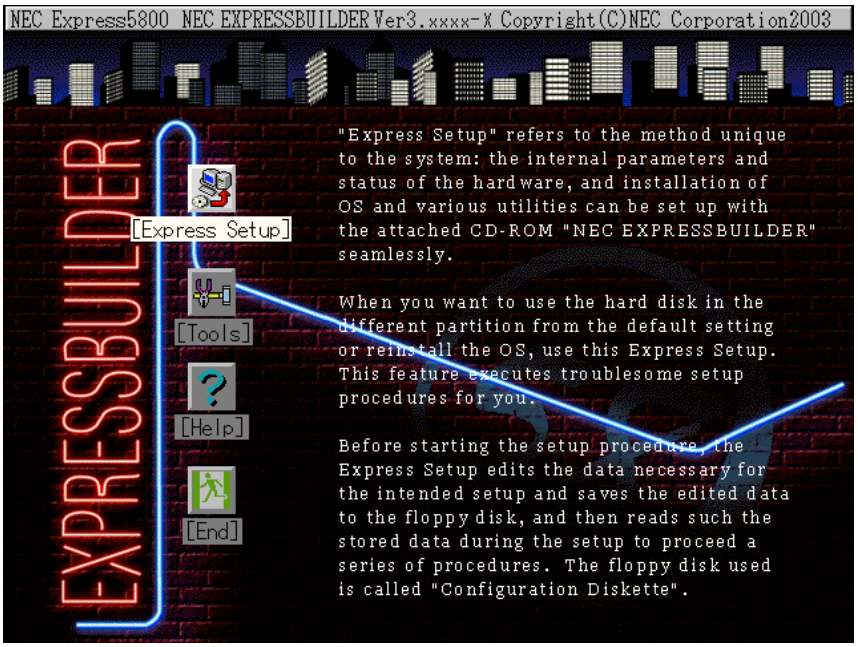
NEC EXPRESSBUILDER is an automated software integration tool to help simplify the process of installing and configuring your server. Shipped with all NEC servers, the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM provides a flexible, guided installation process for system administrators to install Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, or other operating systems (contact your service representative for the server certified operating systems).

NOTE: Before using NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for initial setup, complete the hardware configuration.

NEC EXPRESSBUILDER includes three distinct programs. Two can be booted under DOS for initial setup, and one is for use under Windows operating system.

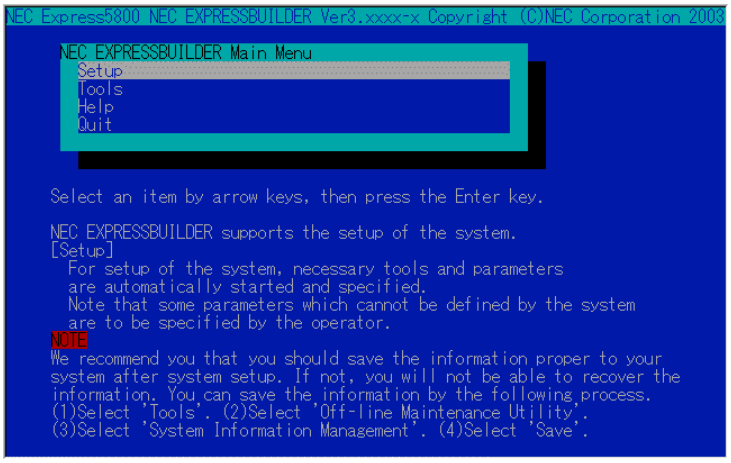
- DOS-based with local console

  Used to set up the server at the first time. This program is also used to diagnose the server and to install/uninstall the management utilities on the maintenance partition of the system drive.


NEC Express5800 NEC EXPRESSBUILDER Ver3.xxxx-X Copyright(C)NEC Corporation2003
EXPRESSBUILDER
[Express Setup]
[Tools]
[Help]
[End]
"Express Setup" refers to the method unique to the system: the internal parameters and status of the hardware, and installation of OS and various utilities can be set up with the attached CD-ROM "NEC EXPRESSBUILDER" seamlessly.
When you want to use the hard disk in the different partition from the default setting or reinstall the OS, use this Express Setup. This feature executes troublesome setup procedures for you.
Before starting the setup procedure, the Express Setup edits the data necessary for the intended setup and saves the edited data to the floppy disk, and then reads such the stored data during the setup to proceed a series of procedures. The floppy disk used is called "Configuration Diskette".

- DOS-based with remote console

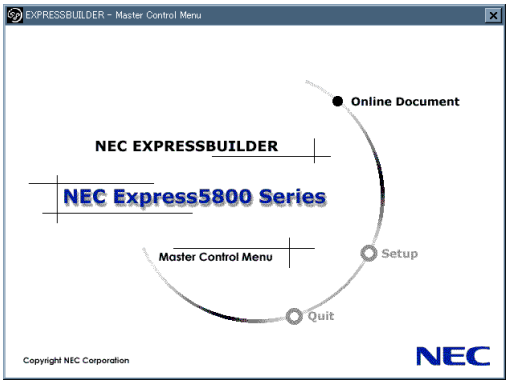
  Used to set up the server from the management workstation by accessing the server over the network or via COM2 (serial) port.


NEC Express5800 NEC EXPRESSBUILDER Ver3.xxxx-x Copyright (C)NEC Corporation 2003
NEC EXPRESSBUILDER Main Menu
Setup
Tools
Help
Quit
Select an item by arrow keys, then press the Enter key.
NEC EXPRESSBUILDER supports the setup of the system.
[Setup]
For setup of the system, necessary tools and parameters
are automatically started and specified.
Note that some parameters which cannot be defined by the system
are to be specified by the operator.
NOTE
We recommend you that you should save the information proper to your
system after system setup. If not, you will not be able to recover the
information. You can save the information by the following process.
(1)Select 'Tools'. (2)Select 'Off-line Maintenance Utility'.
(3)Select 'System Information Management'. (4)Select 'Save'.

NOTE: No keyboard connected to the server is permitted to run this program.

- Windows-based

  This program is called as "Master Control Menu" that can run under the Microsoft Windows system (Windows 95 or later and Windows NT 4.0 or later). You can install the several applications and read the documentation from the menu.



NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for DOS-Based with Local Console

This subsection describes the procedures for using NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for DOS-based with local console.

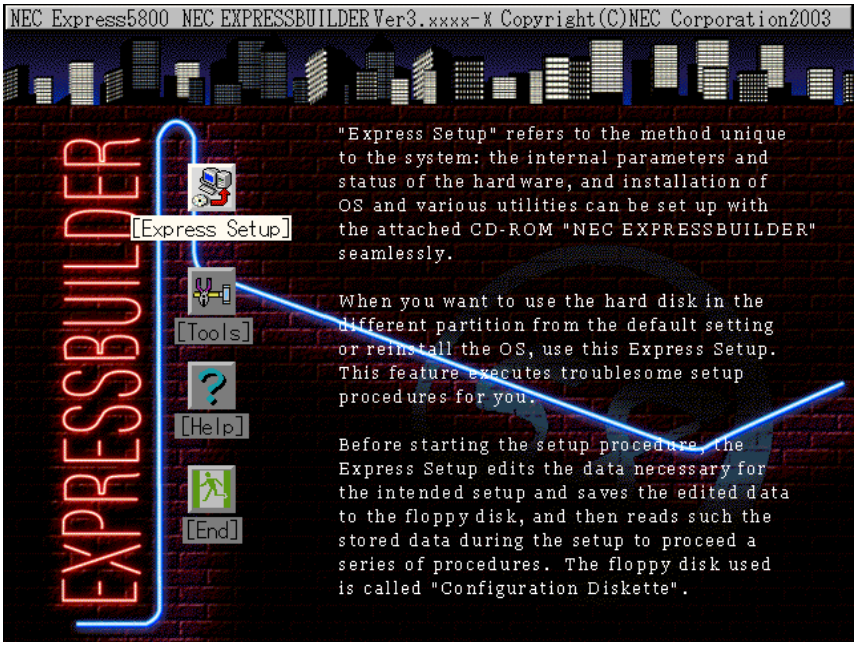
Starting NEC EXPRESSBUILDER

The following procedure instructs you to start NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

> **IMPORTANT:** Do not remove the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM while NEC EXPRESSBUILDER is running.

1. Turn on peripheral devices and the server in this order.
2. Set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM supplied with your server to the CD-ROM drive of your server.
3. Ensure that the floppy disk drive is empty.
4. Press the RESET switch or press **Ctrl**, **Alt**, and **Delete** to reboot the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER. (You may also turn off and then on again to reboot the server.)

   NEC EXPRESSBUILDER boots up displaying the top menu.


NEC Express5800 NEC EXPRESSBUILDER Ver3.xxxx-x Copyright(C)NEC Corporation2003
EXPRESSBUILDER
[Express Setup]
[Tools]
[Help]
[End]
"Express Setup" refers to the method unique to the system: the internal parameters and status of the hardware, and installation of OS and various utilities can be set up with the attached CD-ROM "NEC EXPRESSBUILDER" seamlessly.
When you want to use the hard disk in the different partition from the default setting or reinstall the OS, use this Express Setup. This feature executes troublesome setup procedures for you.
Before starting the setup procedure, the Express Setup edits the data necessary for the intended setup and saves the edited data to the floppy disk, and then reads such the stored data during the setup to proceed a series of procedures. The floppy disk used is called "Configuration Diskette".

Express Setup

"Express Setup" is intended for initial setup of the server. Its automatic installation mode guides the user easily through the process by detailing specific hardware features and providing screen prompts for software selection and configuration. The program loads the utilities and drivers, applies RAID settings, partitions the disk, and installs the desired operating system.

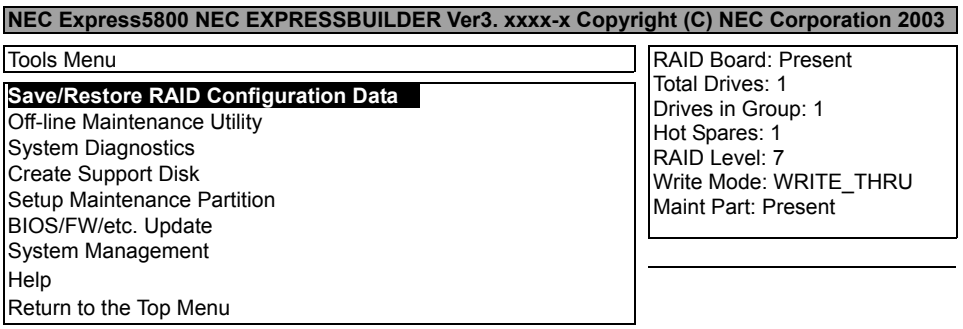
If you install Windows Server 2003 or Windows 2000 Server, after a few tasks are completed, all that remains to be done is to remove the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and install the Windows CD-ROM, input a product ID number, and acknowledge the license agreement.

IMPORTANT:

- The Express Setup is intended for the initial setup of the server system and, therefore, the Express Setup clears the contents of the hard disk.
- Once Express setup is started, do not remove "Configuration Diskette" from the floppy disk drive without any directions.

Tools

"Tools" is also intended for initial setup of the server. It provides more installation options than Express Setup and permits the user to quickly create utility support disks, run the Off-line Maintenance Utility and system diagnostic utility, set up a maintenance partition, and update the various BIOS programs.



- Save/Restore RAID Configuration Data

  The item allows the configuration information on the disk array system to be saved or restored from the floppy disk.

  – Save Disk Array Configuration Data

    The configuration information on the disk array controller is saved into the floppy disk. If you set or change RAID, always use this function to save the configuration information into a floppy disk.

– Restore Disk Array Configuration Data

The configuration information saved in a floppy disk is restored to NVRAM and hard disk on the disk array controller.

If the configuration information is broken or changed by mistake, restore the configuration information.

When the defected disk array controller is replaced, the configuration information on the hard disk must be saved into the disk array controller. However, if the configuration information on the new disk array controller is saved into a hard disk, use this function to restore the configuration information.

IMPORTANT:

- Some Disk Array Controllers do not support this function. In that case, this menu will not be shown.
- This is a function for maintenance. Please do not use it except maintenance.

- Off-line Maintenance Utility

Off-line Maintenance Utility is an OS-independent maintenance program that performs preventive maintenance and error analysis for your server. See Chapter 8 or online help for details.

- System Diagnostics

Executes various tests on the server system to check if the server functions are normal and if the connection between the server and additional board is normal.

After the System Diagnostics is executed, a system check program assigned to each model starts. See Chapter 7 for details.

- Create Support Disk

NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM contains a number of device drivers and utilities that you can put on floppy disks and load onto your system.

Using this menu creates a support disk by copying from the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM. If your system has the Windows operating system, you may find it more convenient to use NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for Windows-based to make support disks

Write the displayed title on the floppy disk label, which is useful for management in the future. Customers are to provide a floppy disk to create a support disk.

– Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER

Creates a support disk for installing Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition and Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition. (No need to create this disk when installing the operating system with the Express Setup.)

– Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER

Creates a support disk for installing Windows 2000 Server and Windows 2000 Advanced Server. (No need to create this disk when installing the operating system with the Express Setup.)

– ROM-DOS Startup FD

Creates a support disk for starting the ROM-DOS system.

– Off-line Maintenance Utility Bootable FD

Creates a support disk for activating the Off-line Maintenance Utility.

– System Management FD

Creates a support disk for activating the System Management.

■ Setup Maintenance Partition

Maintenance partition is a specific partition for the server and created on your system disk. About 55MB of the maintenance partition includes the various maintenance utilities and executable commands.

In this menu, you can create the maintenance partition, install the various utilities, and update the utilities. The maintenance utilities installed in the maintenance partition are system diagnostics, System Management, and Off-line Maintenance Utility.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not reset or turn off the server while the running this menu. If the processing is discontinued, the system becomes unable to start.
- The existence of the maintenance partition may be identified from the operating system. In order to retain the Configuration Data, do not delete the partition.

NOTES:

- The maintenance partition, once created, will not be recreated again.
- When the maintenance partition does not exist, some menu items do not appear.

– Create Maintenance Partition

NEC EXPRESSBUILDER creates about 55MB of the maintenance partition on the system disk (or disk array system) as work area. The various utilities are installed when the maintenance partition is created successfully or when the maintenance partition is already created.

– Install Maintenance Partition Utilities

Various utilities are installed in the maintenance partition from the CD-ROM.

– Update Maintenance Partition Utilities

Various utilities are copied in the Maintenance Partition from the update disk. This menu is only used when the update disk is supplied from your service representative or attached with your system.

– FDISK

Execute FDISK command of ROM-DOS system. You can create/delete partitions, etc.

- BIOS/FW/etc. Update

  This menu allows you to update the software module such as BIOS and firmware of the server by using the update disk (3.5-inch floppy disk) that is distributed from NEC customer service representative.

  After rebooting the system, an update program is started automatically from the floppy disk, and the various BIOS and firmware programs are updated.

  IMPORTANT: Do not turn off the server while the update program is running. If the update processing is discontinued, the system becomes unable to start.

- System Management

  The parameters of BMC (Baseboard Management Controller) are set for remote control and alert.

- Help

  Displays explanations about various functions of NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

- Return to the Top Menu

  Choosing this menu returns to the Top Menu.

NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for DOS-based with Remote Console

This subsection describes the procedures for using NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for DOS-based with remote console.

NEC EXPRESSBUILDER contains the remote console feature that allows the system administrator to set up the server from the management workstation (management PC) via the network or the server's COM 2 (serial) port.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not use this feature on any other computer than the server, or on any other server obtained without the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER. Doing so may cause a failure of the server.
- When a keyboard is connected to the server, the remote console feature is disabled. The NEC EXPRESSBUILDER determines that the server has a console. (Nothing is displayed on the management PC.)
- If you fail to configure the disk array controller N8103-80F or 81F from the remote console, try again using the server console.
- The system may fail to operate with the transfer rate of 115.2 Kbps for serial console redirection. Specify any other transfer rate than 115.2 Kbps.

Starting

The following two methods are available to start the server.

- Running NEC EXPRESSBUILDER from the management PC via LAN
- Running NEC EXPRESSBUILDER from the management PC via direct connection (COM 2)

For the procedure for starting NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for DOS-based with Remote Console, refer to Chapter 6 "MWA" – "Remote Management Configuration for the Server without Console".

IMPORTANT:

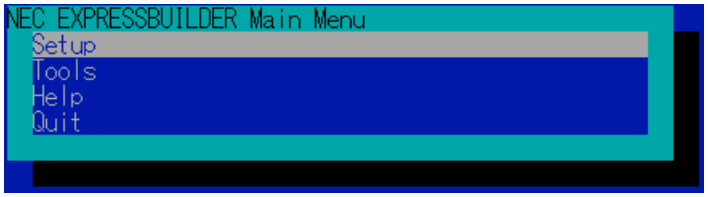
- Do not change the boot device order in BOOT menu in BIOS SETUP. NEC EXPRESSBUILDER cannot be used if the CD-ROM drive is not the first device to launch the system.
- To use this feature, you need 3.5-inch floppy disk. Please prepare the floppy disk.

NOTE: The following items of BIOS setup information will be set as shown below.

- Onboard NIC: [Enabled]
- Serial 1 (DB-9) Address: [3F8]
- Serial 1 (DB-9) IRQ: [4]
- Serial 2 (RJ45) Address: [2F8]
- Serial 2 (RJ45) IRQ: [3]
- BIOS Redirection Port: [Serial 2 (RJ45)]
- Baud Rate: [19.2k]
- Flow Control: [CTS/RTS]
- Terminal Type: [PC-ANSI]

Main Menu

Shown below are the main menu items.



- Setup

  Automatically sets up the server.

- Tools

  Launch the features of NEC EXPRESSBUILDER individually.

- Help

  Help message on NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

- Quit

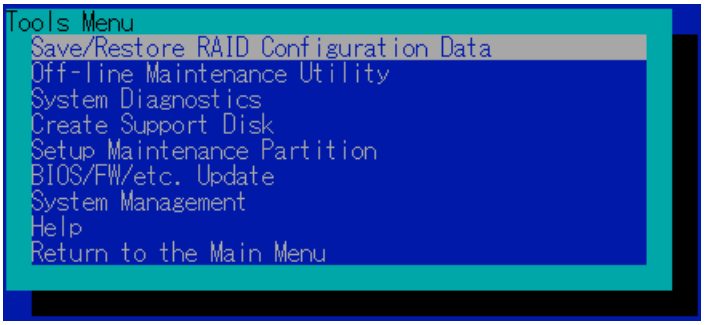
  Quit NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

Setup

The NEC EXPRESSBUILDER checks the hardware configuration of the server. The disk array and maintenance partition are automatically configured.

Tools

When you select the [Tools] on the Main Menu, the following screen appears.



The menu items available only in remote console operation among those described in section "NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for DOS-based with Local Console" are displayed. See the previous subsection for detailed explanation of menu items.

IMPORTANT: The followings are varied from the [Tools] menu in the local console mode.

- Test items and operation method of System Diagnostics. See Chapter 7 for details.
- Type of disks to be created in [Create Support Disk]

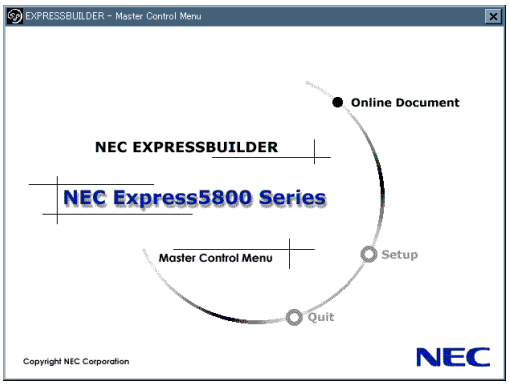
NEC EXPRESSBUILDER for Windows-Based (Master Control Menu)

The Master Control Menu is used to,

- Read documentation,
- Install the management software, and
- Install the viewer application (Adobe Acrobat Reader).

NOTES:

- Master Control Menu requires Microsoft Windows 95 (or later) or Windows NT 4.0 (or later).
- To read documentation (HTML and PDF files) in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM, the HTML browser (Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 5.0 (or later) or Netscape Communicator Version 4.0 (or later)), and Adobe Acrobat Reader Version 4.05 (or later) must be required in your system.



Put the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive. Master Control Menu appears on the screen automatically. If the Autorun function is invalid in your system, run the \MC\1ST.EXE file in the CD-ROM directly.

Some items are grayed-out when the logon user does not have the authority of the administrator or the system is not proper for the installation of the application.

To use Master Control Menu,

- Click on [Online Document], [Setup] or [Quit], or
- Click the right mouse button on Master Control Menu window.

CONFIGURATION DISKETTE CREATOR

"Configuration Diskette Creator" is a tool to create [Configuration Diskette] that is used for configuring the server with the Express Setup (see Chapter 5 for details).

If you use the Configuration Diskette created by the Express Setup and Configuration Diskette Creator to operate the setup, you can setup from the installation of OS to several utilities automatically except for a few key input to confirm the specification. Also, you can install the system with the same specification as before when re-installing the system. We recommend you to create [Configuration Diskette] to setup the servers from NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

> **NOTE:** You can install Windows 2000 and Windows Server 2003 without [Configuration Diskette]. Also, you can modify/newly create [Configuration Diskette] during the setup with NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

Installing Configuration Diskette Creator

This section describes about installing Configuration Diskette Creator on the computer that is running with Windows Server 2003/Windows 2000, Windows NT3.51, and Windows 95/98/Me to create Configuration Diskette.

> **NOTE:** Configuration Diskette Creator works on PC-AT compatible computers.

Windows Server 2003 / Windows 2000 / Windows NT 4.0 / Windows 95/98/Me/XP

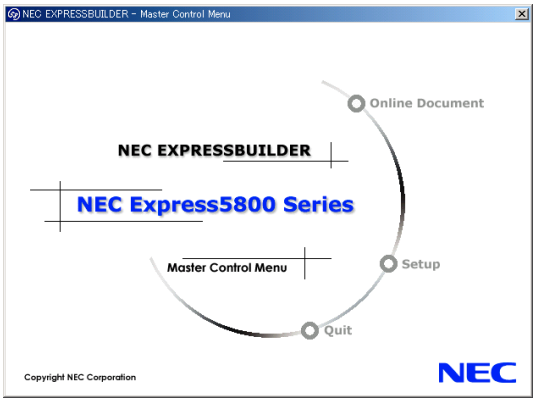
Follow the procedure below to install Configuration Diskette Creator on the computer that is running with Windows Server 2003/Windows 2000, Windows NT3.51, Windows 95/98/Me/XP.

> **NOTE:** The instructions displayed on the screen may differ according to the model you are using, but setup can be operated with the same procedure.

1. Start the OS.
2. Insert the attached NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into CD-ROM drive.

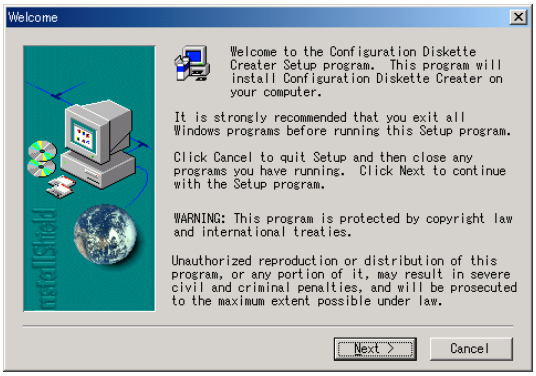
   Master Control Menu will appear.

3. Right-click on the screen or left-click [Software Setup]. The menu will appear.

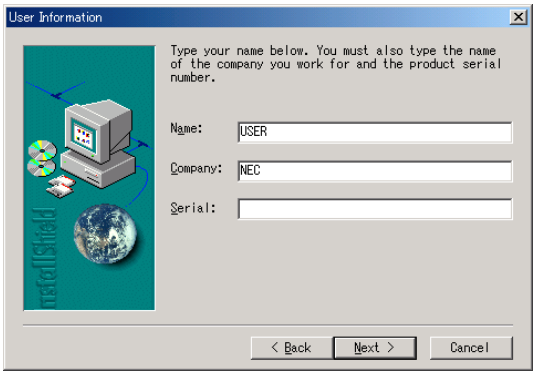


4. Click [Configuration Diskette Creator]. Setup Wizard will start.

Follow the message to continue the installation.


Welcome
Welcome to the Configuration Diskette Creater Setup program. This program will install Configuration Diskette Creater on your computer.
It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program.
WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
Next >
Cancel

NOTE: It is not necessary to input [Serial Number] on [User Information] dialog box.



After completing the Configuration Diskette Creator installation, proceed to [Creating Configuration Diskette].

Creating Configuration Diskette

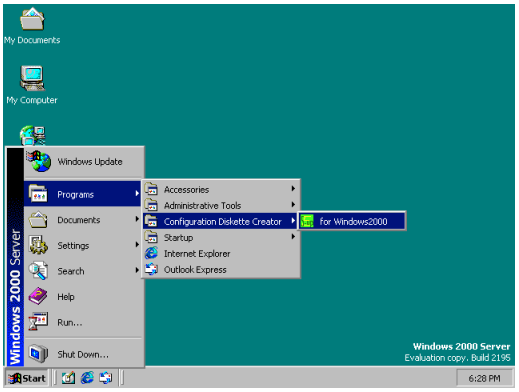
This section describes about specifying setup information that is necessary for OS installation and creating [Configuration Diskette]. Follow the procedure below.

> **NOTE:** In the procedure below, the folder name that is specified when installing Trekking command is assumed as [Configuration Diskette Creator].

1. Display Configuration Diskette Creator window.

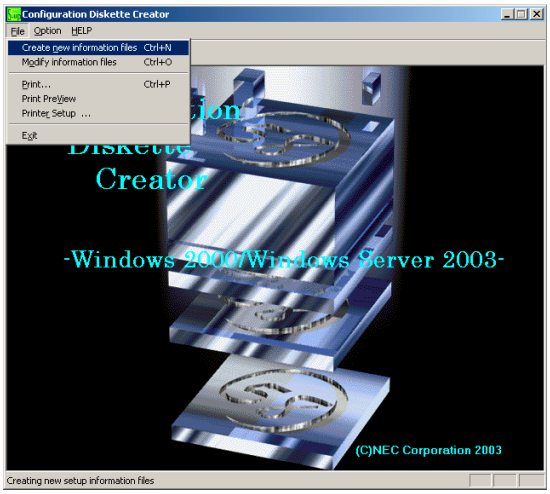
<On Windows Server 2003/Windows 2000/Windows NT 4.0 / Windows 95/98/Me/XP>

From the Start pop-up menu, click [Program] → [Configuration Diskette Creator] and select [Trekking] to be installed.



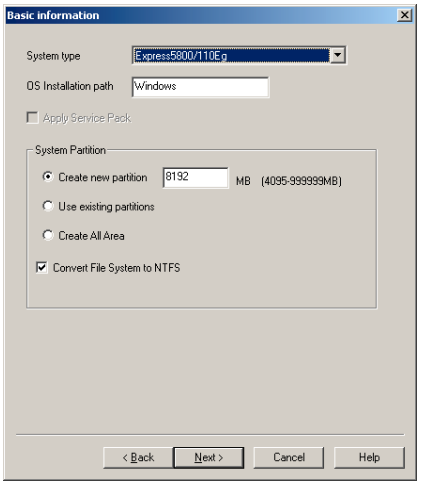
2. Click [Create new information files] from the [File] menu.

The [Disk Environment] dialog box will be displayed.



3. Specify each item and click on [OK].

The dialog boxes to specify setup information will be displayed in order, such as [Basic Information] dialog box.

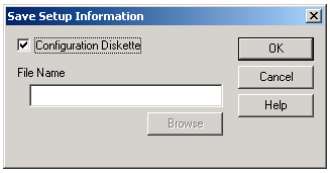


4. Follow the message to specify each item on the dialog box and click on [Next].

NOTE: If you click on [Cancel], all the input value will be deleted.

When completing the specification of setup information, the [Save the Files] dialog box will appear.

5. Confirm that the [Configuration Diskette] check box is checked, and input file name for the Setup File in [File Name].



6. Insert the floppy disk formatted by 1.44MB into floppy disk drive and click on [OK].

Now [Configuration Diskette] has been created. [Configuration Diskette] is used when you install Windows Server 2003 or Windows 2000. Put a label and keep it where it will not be lost.

NOTE: For the information on the contents of each specifying item, refer to the Help.

If you want to modify the information file that already exists, click [Modify information Files] on Configuration Diskette Creator window. Refer to the Help to modify the inf file.

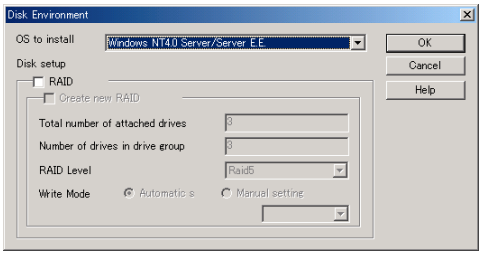
Installing Optional Mass Storage Driver

To install optional Mass Storage Driver that is supported by the Express Setup, follow the procedure below to create [Configuration Diskette].

1. Display Configuration Diskette Creator window.
2. From the [File] menu, click [Create new information files].

   [Disk Environment] dialog box will be displayed.
3. Specify each item and click on [OK].

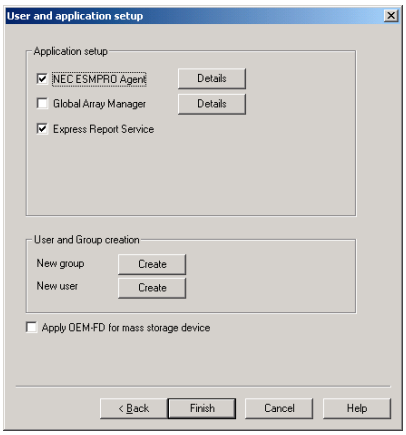
   The dialog boxes to specify setup information will be displayed in order, such as [Basic Information] dialog box.



4. Follow the message to specify each item on the dialog box and click on [Next].

NOTE: If you click on [Cancel], all the input value will be deleted.

5. When [User and application setup] is displayed, check [Apply OEM-FD for mass storage device].



6. When the [Save Setup Information] dialog box is displayed, confirm that the [Configuration Diskette] check box is checked, and input file name for the Setup File in [File Name].
7. Insert the floppy disk formatted by 1.44MB into floppy disk drive and click on [OK].

NEC ESMPRO

The NEC ESMPRO (referred to as ESMPRO hereafter) lets a system administrator manage remote servers across a network. ESMPRO monitors server hardware and software configurations, failures, and performance. With log data collected by ESMPRO, a system administrator can track long-term and short-term performance, monitor server usage, create graphs to record trends, and check server failure rates. The administrator can use the information collected to create more efficient data routing procedures and optimize server usage.

Functions and Features

The ESMPRO offers many functions and features for managing remote servers across a network. These features help the system administrator perform daily system operation, system extension, and transfer tasks. Some features of ESMPRO Manager include:

- Hardware and software server configuration
  - Hardware resources mounted in servers, such as the CPU, memory, disks, disk arrays, and LAN boards.
  - Software resources, such as operating system information and drivers running on each server.
- Server failures
  - On-screen real-time displays provide the system administrator with the failure type, location, cause, and suggested corrective action.
  - Failure data includes hardware failure information such as system board temperature, memory failure, crashes, and software failure information.
- Performance
  - ESMPRO monitors server performance and displays server usage on the screen and displays information, such as the rate of CPU load, memory usage, disk usage, and LAN traffic. Usage threshold values can help the system administrator monitor and prevent server overloads.

For installation procedure and detailed explanations on NEC ESMPRO, refer to the online document in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM.

NEC MWA

MWA is an application that enables the remote management of the server through a management PC over the network. (A management PC is a computer running NEC ESMPRO Manager.) This application assists in reducing responsibility of the administrator for managing the operation of the server.

A management PC running MWA must be connected to the server via LAN, WAN, Direct for the remote management through MWA.

NOTE: See the online documented "MWA First Step Guide" in NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM for the details on MWA setup and how to use.

cd-rom-drive:\mwa\doc\en\mwa_fsg.pdf

See MWA Online Help for the details on the functions and how to operate them.

IMPORTANT: The LAN 1 port on NEC Express5800 server should be used to communicate with MWA via LAN. The serial2 port should be used for direct connection and the front serial2 port should be used via WAN.

The Functions of MWA

MWA enables the following functions by connecting to the standard BIOS and BMC of the server.

Remote Console Function

This function enables you to remotely monitor the server screen during POST (Power On Self-Test) or booted DOS through MWA on a management PC. During the time, you can also key in data to the server from the keyboard of the management PC.

IMPORTANT:

- The COM2 (Serial) port on NEC Express5800 server cannot be recognized on OS during the remote console function via LAN because BMC takes control over it.
- When you use the LAN remote console function to this NEC Express5800 server, the power control of NEC Express5800 server should be executed through MWA.
  Use the automatic connection to start the LAN remote console function to this NEC Express5800 server. See MWA First Step Guide how to set the automatic connection.
- Set [Disabled] to [Advanced] - [Memory Configuration] - [Extended Memory Test] on Express5800 server when you use LAN/serial remote console function.
- Exiting BIOS SETUP utility by unusual procedure such as power-off or reset) may disable the remote console function configured on the server.

Remote Drive Function

MWA enables to boot the servers from the floppy disk drive or disk image file on the management PC.

NOTES:

- This function is available only for the management PC connected to the server with LAN.
- The remote drive may fail to boot the server depending on size of memory used by boot OS or application.

Remote Power Control

MWA on a management PC enables to send the following power control commands to the server remotely.

- Power ON
- Power OFF
- Power Cycle
- Reset
- OS Shutdown*

  * *NEC ESMPRO Agent in the server must be supported and enabled the remote OS shutdown function.*

Remote Information Collection

MWA on a management PC enables to collect the following information remotely.

- IPMI information (System Event Log, Sensor Data Record, Field Replaceable Unit)
- Panel information (Power state, LCD, System Watchdog, Watchdog interval, Power on hours)
- BMC setting information

Linkage with NEC ESMPRO

When MWA receives an alert from BMC on the server, it analyzes the alert and automatically registers to the alert log of NEC ESMPRO.

NOTE: This function is available only for the management PC connected to the server via LAN.

System Requirements

Hardware/Software requirements for MWA are as follows.

- Management PC (a PC running MWA)

  MWA is applicapable on the management PC that Windows OS is running.
  See the "NEC MWA First Step Guide" for the details.

- NEC Express5800 server to be remotely maintained by MWA

  The server is equipped with the RomPilot or BMC features.
  Your server is equipped with BMC (IPMI Ver. 1.5).

Installation

This subsection describes the installation procedures for MWA Manager and MWA Agent.

> **NOTE:** MWA Agent is application for BMC configuration on Windows. When MWA Manger controls the server remotely, MWA Agent is not necessary.

MWA Manager

Install MWA Manager on a management PC from NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM.

1. Boot Windows on a management PC.

   > **NOTE:** See the "MWA First Step Guide" about supported OS.

2. Insert NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive. Master Control Menu of NEC EXPRESSBUILDER will be automatically displayed.
3. Click [Setup] → [NEC MWA].
4. Click [MWA Manager].

   MWA Manager installation program will start. Follow the directions to install.

MWA Agent

Install MWA Agent on the server from NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM.

1. Boot Windows on the server.
2. Insert NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive. Master Control Menu of NEC EXPRESSBUILDER will be automatically displayed.
3. Click [Setup] → [NEC MWA].
4. Click [MWA Agent].

   MWA Agent installation program will start. Follow the directions to install.

Remote Management Configuration

The required media and information to configure the remote feature are listed below.

- NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM
- Configuration Information

Configuration is necessary for both NEC MWA and the servers. NEC MWA must be set the configuration information for the servers to be remotely managed.

Two configuration methods are available for the server:

- Configuration by starting the server through the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and executing "System Management".
- Configuration by NEC MWA Agent that is started under Windows of the server.

For details on the procedure, see the "NEC MWA First Step Guide" in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM or the online help of NEC MWA.

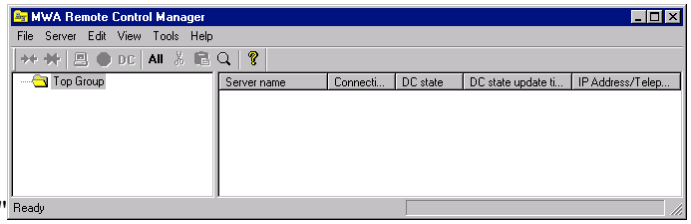
Remote Management Configuration for the Server without Console

This subsection describes the procedures for using BIOS SETUP utilities and DOS-based tool on the server with remote console in case that the server is not connected the console like as keyboard. The following two methods are available.

- Through the management PC via LAN
- Through the management PC with direct connection

Through the management PC via LAN

1. Click [Program] - [NEC MWA] - [MWA] from the start menu on the management PC installed NEC MWA. MWA will start and open [Remote Control Manager].



2. Insert a formatted floppy disk of 1.44 MB into the floppy disk drive of the management PC.
3. Select [Configuration] from the [File] menu of NEC MWA to display the [Configuration] dialog box.
4. Select [New] to display the [Select a model (New)] dialog box.
5. Check [Write data to FD] and select the model name to display the Configuration dialog box for each server.
6. Set and register the configuration information on the configuration dialog box and then write the configuration information into the floppy disk with the following file name:

   <Configuration Information File name>

   CSL_LESS.cfg

   The setting items of the server are as follows:

   Computer Name (The managed server name. Arbitrary.)

   IP Address

   Subnet Mask

   Default Gateway

   Primary Alert Receiver (IP address of management PC)

7. Select the [Properties] command from the popup menu displayed by clicking the right mouse button on the server name to display the [Properties] dialog box.

8. If the [Properties] dialog box appears, provide the following setting:

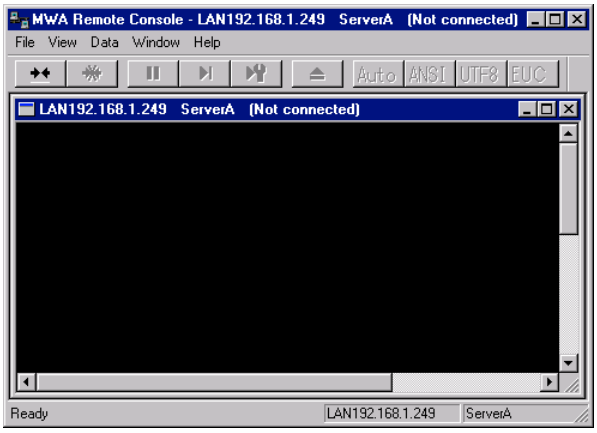
   <[ID] page>

   Connection Type: LAN

   <[Alert Notifications] page>

   Remove the check of [Use Default Settings] and check the [RESET] of [Activate].

9. Select the [Open Remote Console] command from the popup menu displayed by clicking the right mouse button on the server name to start the [MWA Remote Console].



10. Select the [Action at RemoteConsole Connect] command from the popup menu displayed by clicking the right mouse button on the server window to display the [Action at RemoteConsole Connect] dialog box. Then select [Go MWA mode].

11. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the server.

    Insert the floppy disk storing the configuration information file into the floppy disk drive.

12. Turn off the power of the server and then on again to restart the system. After a single reboot, MWA Remote Console displays the main menu of NEC EXPRESSBUILDER and you can operate tools on the server through the management PC.

> **NOTE:** The main menu appears without rebooting it when the setting in the configuration information file is already established.

13. When the main menu appears on the screen of the management PC, remove the floppy disk from the floppy disk drive.

14. Select the [Properties] command from the popup menu displayed by clicking the right mouse button on the server name to display the [Properties] dialog box. Execute [Connection Check] on the [ID] tab page.

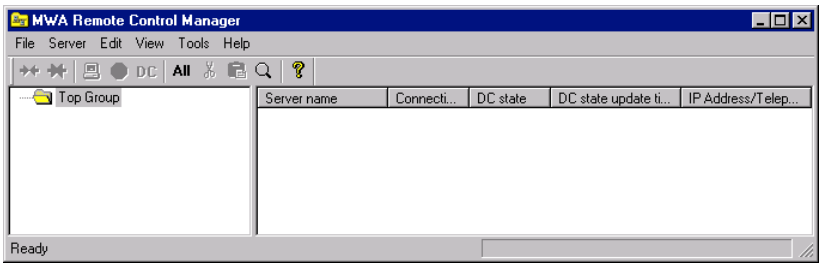
> **IMPORTANT:** When the Operation with remote console is end, remove the check of [RESET] of [Activate] in the [Properties] dialog box and reboot the server.

15. When you want to operate other tools, remove the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive and turn off and on the server through the command of the MWA Remote Control Manager to start other tools. Select [Power control] command from the popup menu displayed by clicking the right mouse button on the server name. You can control the server power.

Through the management PC with direct connection

1. Click [Program] - [NEC MWA] - [MWA] from the start menu on the management PC installed NEC MWA.

   MWA will start and open [Remote Control Manager].



2. Select [Environment] - [Direct Connection Setting] from the [File] menu of NEC MWA to display the [Direct Connection] dialog box. Then provide the following setting:

   <Direct Connection>

   Port No.: COM port on the management PC to be connected

   Baud Rate: 19200

   Flow Control: RTS/CTS"

3. Select [Configuration] from the [File] menu of NEC MWA to display the [Configuration] dialog box.

4. Select [New] to display the [Select a model (New)] dialog box.

5. Check [Write data to FD]. Then select the model name to display the Configuration dialog box for each server.

6. Set and register the configuration information on the configuration dialog box and then write the information into the floppy disk with the following file name:

   <Configuration Information File name>

   CSL_LESS.cfg

7. Select the [Properties] command from the popup menu displayed by clicking the right mouse button on the server name to display the [Properties] dialog box.

8. If the [Properties] dialog box appears, provide the following setting:

   <[ID] page>

   Connection Type: COM

   COM: Direct (Cross cable)

9. Select the [Open Remote Console] command from the popup menu displayed by clicking the right mouse button on the server name to start the [MWA Remote Console]. Then click on the [Connect] button on the MWA Remote Console.

10. Connect the management PC to serial port 2 (COM2) on the server directly with RS-232C cross cable.

11. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the server.

    Insert the floppy disk storing the configuration information file into the floppy disk drive.

12. Turn off the power of the server and then on again to restart the system.

    After a single reboot, MWA Remote Console displays the main menu of NEC EXPRESSBUILDER and you can operate tools on the server through the management PC.

    NOTE: The main menu appears without rebooting it when the setting in the configuration information file is already established.

13. When you want to operate other tools, remove the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive and Turn off and on the server to start other tools.

    NOTE: When the Operation with remote console is end, click the [Disconnect] on MWA Remote Console

Power Console Plus

Power Console Plus is a utility to control the RAID system of the disk array controller (MegaRAID controller) produced by LSI Logic. Use of Power Console Plus enables operations (e.g., monitoring and maintenance) of RAID systems that are constructed on local NEC Express servers and NEC Express servers connected through networks (TCP/IP). The operations can be done online on graphical screens without the system being stopped.

Major Functions

Power Console Plus has the following features:

- Supporting the Wizard function to facilitate configuration
- Enabling the change of RAID levels
- Being compatible with SAF-TE
- Supporting the performance monitor
- Supporting enclosure functions such as temperature monitoring, power monitoring, and fan monitoring
- Enabling the settings of Write, Read, and Cache policies for each logical drive
- Supporting the save and restore functions for configuration
- Enabling the display of the SCSI transfer rate

Components

Power Console Plus consists of the following five components:

- SNMP Agent

  This function is not yet supported. Do not install SNMP Agent.

- MegaRAID Service Monitor

  Enables NEC ESMPRO to monitor the MegaRAID controller by registering event logs. Install MegaRAID Service Monitor in the NEC Express server in which the MegaRAID controller is mounted.

- MegaRAID Client

  Controls the RAID system on graphical screens. Install MegaRAID Client in the NEC Express server in which the MegaRAID controller mounted or in the management PC that is connected through the NEC Express server and network.

- MegaRAID Server

  Enables control of the MegaRAID controller via the network. Install MegaRAID Server in the NEC Express server in which the MegaRAID controller mounted.

- MegaRAID Registration Server

  Enables control of the MegaRAID controller via the network. Install in one of NEC Express servers and management PCs that are connected through network. The above components must be installed correctly for establishing the environment to use Power Console Plus.

Power Console Plus components to be installed are different between the target servers and management PC.

- Server:
  NEC Express server in which the MegaRAID controller is mounted

  Install the following three components in this server:

  – MegaRAID Service Monitor

  – MegaRAID Server

  – MegaRAID Client

- Management PC:
  Management PC that monitors and controls servers via the network (TCP/IP)

  When managing array on Terminal Server working on Windows NT Server Version 4.0 Terminal Server Edition, prepare PC, and install Management PC component. Management PC does not guarantee operation on Client, which used Terminal Server, Terminal Server Emulator, WBT.

  Start Power Console Plus of management PC, after the Power On machine that installed "Server" and "Management Server".

  Install the following component in this PC:

  – MegaRAID Client

- Management server:
  Machine that manages all servers that are monitored and controlled by management PCs

  Install the following component in one of the servers or management PCs:

  – MegaRAID Registration Server

Server Setup

This section explains Power Console Plus setup in the NEC Express server in which the MegaRAID controller is mounted.

Operating Environment

This section explains the operating environment required for Power Console Plus to operate on a server.

- Hardware
  - Machine:

    NEC Express5800 series connected with the MegaRAID controller
  - Memory:

    Size large enough for OS operation + 8MB or more
  - Free space of the hard disk:

    5MB or more
  - Display unit:

    Screen size 1024 × 768 or larger
  - Required peripheral equipment:

    Network Interface card

    CD-ROM unit

    Pointing device such as a mouse

Management PC Setup

This section explains Power Console Plus setup in a computer that manages servers via the network (TCP/IP).

Operating Environment

This section explains the operating environment required for Power Console Plus to operate on a management PC.

- Hardware
  - Machine:

    NEC Express5800 series

    PC/AT-compatible machine (which contains Intel Pentium or a CPU at least equivalent to it)
  - Memory:

    Size large enough for OS operation + 8MB or more
  - Free space of the hard disk:

    5 MB or more
  - Display unit:

    Screen size 1024 × 768 or larger
  - Required peripheral equipment:

    Network Interface card

    CD-ROM unit

    Pointing device such as a mouse

Chapter 7

Maintenance

This chapter describes the daily maintenance of the server and precautions when relocating or storing the server.

MAKING BACKUP COPIES

NEC recommends you make backup copies of your valuable data stored in hard disks of the server on a regular basis. For backup storage devices suitable for the server and backup tools, consult with your sales agent.

When you have changed the hardware configuration or BIOS configuration, select "System Information Management" and then "Save" of the Off-line Maintenance Utility to make a backup copy of the system information.

Also make a backup copy of the disk array configuration data if your system is in the array configuration. When your hard disks have been auto-rebuilt due to a failure, it is recommended to make a backup copy of the configuration data. To make a backup copy of the configuration data, use the configuration utility that is resident in the FLASH memory on the optional disk array controller board. Refer to the manual supplied with the board.

CLEANING

Clean the server on a regular basis to keep the serer in a good shape.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may result in death or serious personal injury. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not disassemble, repair, or alter the server.
- Do not look into the CD-ROM drive.
- Do not remove the lithium battery.
- Disconnect the power plug before cleaning with the server.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may cause a fire, personal injury, or property damage. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Avoid installation in extreme temperature conditions.
- Make sure to complete board installation.

Cleaning the Server

For daily cleaning, wipe the external surfaces of the server with a dry soft cloth. Follow the procedure below if stains remain on the surfaces:

IMPORTANT:

- To avoid altering the material and color of the server, do not use volatile solvents such as thinner and benzene to clean the server.
- The power receptacle, the cables, the connectors on the rear panel of server, and the inside of the server must be kept dry. Do not moisten them with water.

1. Make sure that the server is off-powered (the POWER lamp goes off).
2. Unplug the power cord of the server from a power outlet.
3. Wipe off dust from the power cord plug with a dry cloth.
4. Soak a soft cloth in neutral detergent that is diluted with cold or lukewarm water, and squeeze it firmly.
5. Rub off stains on the server with the cloth prepared in Step 4.
6. Soak a soft cloth in water, squeeze it firmly, wipe the server with it once again.
7. Wipe the server with a dry cloth.
8. Wipe off dust from the fan exhaust opening on the rear of the server with a dry cloth.

Cleaning the Interior

One of the most important items in a good maintenance program is regular and thorough cleaning of the interior of the server, especially around the mother board.

Dust buildup inside the server can lead to several problems. As dust acts as a thermal insulator, a buildup can prevent proper system cooling. Excessive heat will shorten the life of server components. Also, dust may contain conductive or corrosive materials that can cause short circuits or corrosion of electrical contacts.

How often you should clean the interior of the server depends on the environment in which it is located. For most office environments, you probably should clean the server every 12 months. For more severe environments, clean the interior every 6 months.

Cleaning the interior of the server entails powering off the server and removing the top cover. You will need a small vacuum cleaner (with plastic tipped nozzle and electrostatic protection), computer grade canned air, and a small brush for cleaning the interior.

Follow the procedure below to clean the interior of the server.

⚠ WARNING

Unplug all power cords.

Unplug all power cords before performing any maintenance. Voltage is present inside the server and display unit even after the power is turned off. All voltage is removed only when the power cord is unplugged.

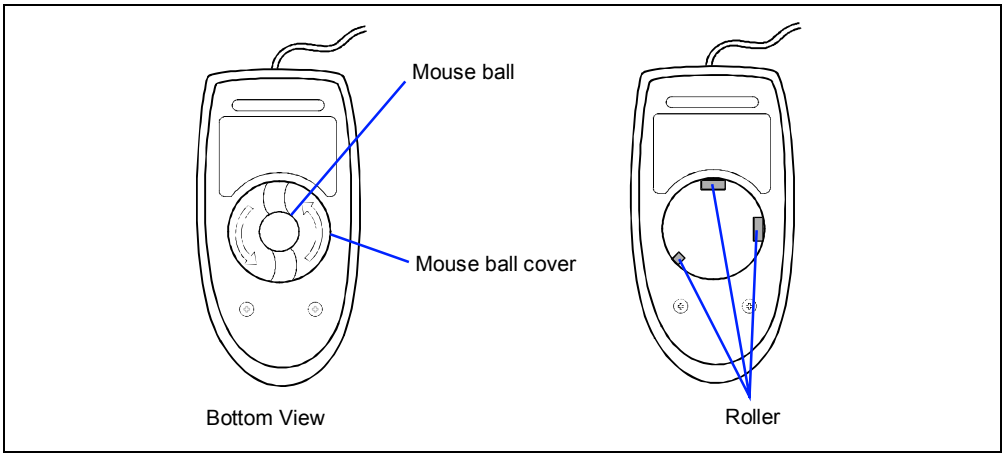
1. Turn off the server and unplug all power cables.
2. Remove the top cover. (See Chapter 9.)
3. Use a small brush to loosen any dust and debris on the mother board.
4. Use computer grade canned air to blow dust off components on the mother board.
5. Use a small vacuum cleaner with plastic tip to vacuum out dust and debris from the interior of the server.
6. Reinstall the top cover. (See Chapter 9.)
7. Reconnect all power cables and turn on the server.

Cleaning the Keyboard/Mouse

Make sure that the server and peripheral devices are all off-powered (the POWER lamp goes off), and then wipe the keyboard surface with a dry cloth.

The mouse operation depends on the degree of smoothness of the internal ball rotation. To keep the mouse ball clean, use the mouse in a place with little dust. Follow the steps below to clean the mouse regularly:

1. Prepare cold or lukewarm water, neutral detergent, alcohol, two dry soft clothes, and cotton swabs.
2. Make sure that the server is off-powered (the POWER lamp goes off).
3. Turn the mouse upside down, and rotate the mouse ball cover counterclockwise to remove it.
4. Take out the ball from the mouse. Cover the bottom of the mouse with your hand, and turn your hand holding the mouse (the mouse is on your palm with the button upward). The mouse ball is released onto your palm.



5. Soak a soft cloth in neutral detergent that is diluted with cold or lukewarm water, and squeeze it firmly.
6. Rub off stains on the mouse ball. Softly wipe the mouse ball with the cloth prepared in Step 5.
7. Wipe the mouse ball with a dry soft cloth.
8. Wipe three small rollers inside the mouse with a cotton swab soaked with alcohol. Wipe stains slowly and carefully by rotating rollers with the tip of the cotton swab.
9. Blow out any dust from the mouse. Protect your eyes from the dust.
10. Put the mouse ball back into the mouse.
11. Place the mouse ball cover, and rotate it clockwise until it is locked.

Cleaning CD-ROM

A dusty CD-ROM or dust-accumulated tray causes the device to fail to read data correctly.

Follow the procedure below to clean the tray and CD-ROM regularly:

1. Make sure that the server is powered (the POWER lamp is lit).
2. Press the Eject button on the front of the CD-ROM drive.
   The tray comes out.
3. Hold the CD-ROM lightly and take it out from the tray.

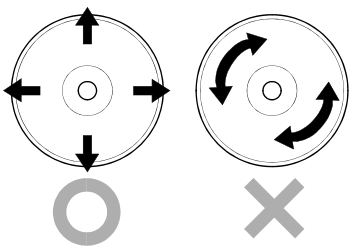
> **NOTE:** Do not touch the signal side of the CD-ROM with your hand.

4. Wipe the tray with a dry soft cloth.

> **IMPORTANT:** Do not wipe the lens of the CD-ROM drive. Doing so may damage the lens and may cause a malfunction of the drive.

5. Press the Eject button or gently push on the tray front to close the tray.
6. Wipe the signal side of the CD-ROM with a dry soft cloth.

> **IMPORTANT:** Wipe CD-ROMs from the center to the outside. Use only CD-ROM cleaner if necessary. Cleaning a CD-ROM with record spray/cleaner, benzene, or thinner causes damage to the CD-ROM contents. At worst, inserting the CD-ROM into the server may cause failure.



SYSTEM DIAGNOSTICS

The System Diagnostics runs several tests on the server.

Use the System Diagnostics program in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER provided with the server to diagnose the server.

Test Items

The following items are tested in system diagnostics.

- Memory
- CPU cache memory
- Hard disk used as a system

IMPORTANT: When executing the System Diagnostics, make sure to remove the LAN cable. Executing the System Diagnostics with the LAN cable connected, the network may be influenced.

NOTE: On checking the hard disk, no data is written into the disk.

Starting and Ending the System Diagnostics

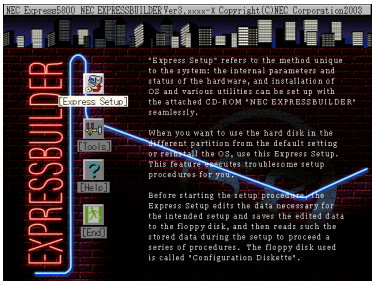
There are two ways to diagnose the server: to use the local console(keyboard) of the server itself, and to use the management PC via serial port(remote console).

Procedures to start the diagnostics program is as follows:

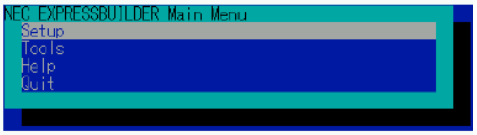
1. Shutdown the OS, and turn off the server. Then, unplug the power cord.
2. Disconnect all the LAN cables from the server.
3. Plug the power cord and turn on the server.
4. Use the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM to reboot the server.

   See the Chapter 6 "NEC EXPRESSBUILDER" for details.

   The following menu appears when started the server using the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.



Local console



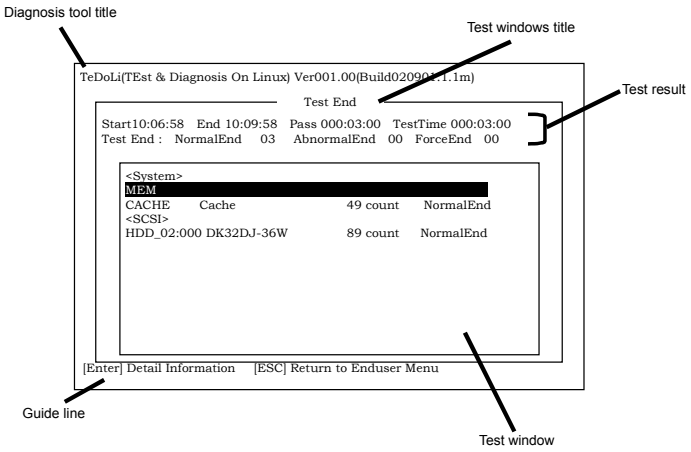
Remote console

5. Select [Tools].

6. Select [System Diagnostics].

The System Diagnostics starts and completes in approximately three minutes.

When the diagnosis completes, the test window title shows "Test End", as the following figure.


Diagnosis tool title
Test windows title
TeDoLi(TEst & Diagnosis On Linux) Ver001.00(Build020903:11.1m)
Test End
Test result
Start10:06:58 End 10:09:58 Pass 000:03:00 TestTime 000:03:00
Test End : NormalEnd 03 AbnormalEnd 00 ForceEnd 00
<System>
MEM
CACHE Cache 49 count NormalEnd
<SCSI>
HDD_02:000 DK32DJ-36W 89 count NormalEnd
[Enter] Detail Information [ESC] Return to Enduser Menu
Guide line
Test window

Diagnosis tool title: shows a name of this diagnosis and Version information.

Test windows title: shows the progress of diagnosis. When it completes, it shows "Test End"

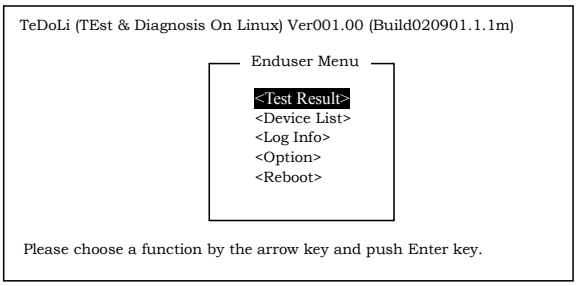
Test Result: shows the information including time of start, end and progress, and result of the diagnosis.

Guide line: shows a description of keys to navigate the window.

Test window: Move the cursor and press Enter to view the detail of the diagnosis.

If an error is detected during the System Diagnostics, the test result shows "Abnormal End" in red color. Move the cursor and press Enter on the diagnosis which error occurred. Take a note of the error message showed, and contact your sales agent.

7. Follow the Guide line showed in the bottom of the screen and press ESC to show the End user Menu showed below.



<Test Result> shows the screen of the diagnosis completed aforementioned.

<Device List> shows the information of all the devices connected.

<Log Info> shows the log information and error messages of the diagnosis. It can be saved to a floppy disk. To save the log information to a floppy disk, insert a formatted floppy disk to a floppy disk drive and select <Save[F]>.

<Option> change where to output log

<Reboot> Restarts the Express Server.

8. Select <Reboot> in the End user Menu above.

   The Express Server restarts, and NEC EXPRESSBUILDER boot the system.

9. Exit the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER, and remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.
10. Turn off the server and unplug the power cord from the receptacle.
11. Reconnect all the LAN cables to the server.
12. Plug the power code.

This completes the System Diagnostics.

RELOCATING/STORING THE SERVER

Follow the procedure below to relocate or store the server:

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may cause a fire, personal injury, or property damage. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Never attempt to lift the server only by yourself.
- Do not install the server in any place other than specified.
- Do not connect/disconnect any interface cable with the power cord of the server plugged to a power source.

IMPORTANT:

- If the server needs to be relocated/stored due to a change in the floor layout to a great extent, contact the sales agent.
- Make sure to make a backup copy of your valuable data in the hard disk, if any.
- Make sure not to apply a shock to hard disks to relocated the server if the contains any.

1. Take a floppy disk and a CD-ROM out of the server, if any.
2. Power off the server (the POWER lamp goes off).
3. Disengage the power cord from the tie wrap.
4. Unplug the power cord of the server from a power outlet.
5. Remove all the cables from the server.
6. Remove the server from the rack cabinet.

   See Chapter 3 for details.
7. Hold the server by its bottom with at least another person to carry the server.
8. Protect the server with the shock-absorbing materials, and pack it securely.

(This page is intentionally left blank.)

Chapter 8

Troubleshooting

If your server does not operate as expected, read this chapter before assuming a failure.

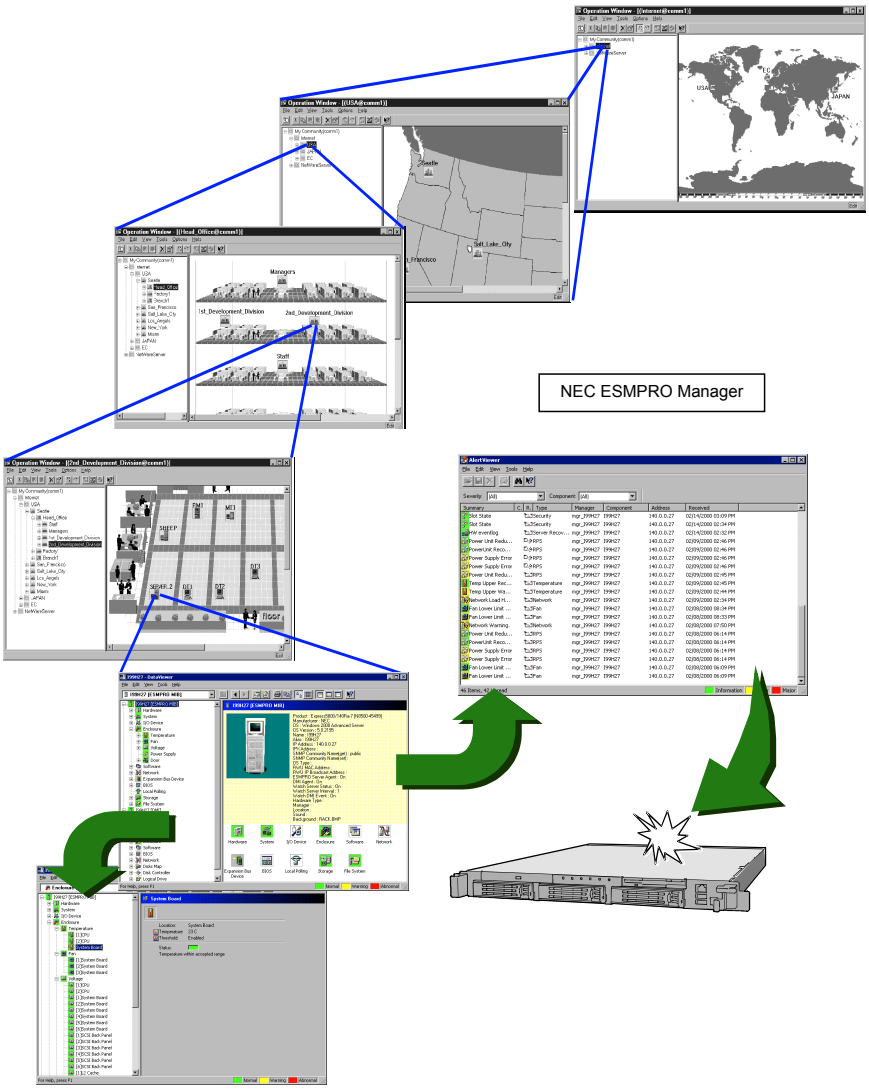
> **NOTE:** For provision against an unexpected failure, it is recommended to install the maintenance utility, NEC ESMPRO, to the server and client computers.

SYSTEM VIEWERS

Monitor the occurrence of fault by NEC ESMPRO during the system operation.

Especially take note on whether any alert is reported to NEC ESMPRO Manager on the language PC. Check whether any alert is reported on the Joint Viewer, Data Viewer, or Alert Viewer of NEC ESMPRO Manager.

[Example]



LAMPS

The server includes lamps to indicate the server states by a variety of colors and display patterns on the front panel, hard disk drive, and power supply.

Chapter 2 "Status Indicators" lists the lamp displays and their meanings and the actions taken at occurrences of failures.

ERROR MESSAGES

If an error occurs in the server, an error message appears on the display unit connected to the server.

Error Messages after Power-on

Powering on the server automatically starts the self-diagnostic program, POST (Power On Self-Test). When the POST detects any error, it displays an error message and its measure on the display unit.

Follow the table below to troubleshoot such errors. However, even when there is no hardware failure, use of the keyboard or mouse at the following timing causes the POST to assume a keyboard controller error and stop processing.

- Immediately after the server is powered
- Immediately after the system is rebooted in response to a keyboard instruction (simultaneous key entry of **Ctrl** + **Alt** + **Delete**)
- Immediately after the system is rebooted in response to an OS instruction
- During hardware initialization following restart of the POST

When the POST detects a hardware failure due to the above reason, restart the server once again. If the same error message reappears, you may assume there is no hardware error. To ensure normal operation of the server, however, make sure to follow the following restrictions.

- Do not make any keyboard entry or use the mouse before the memory count appears on the screen following the server power-on.
- Do not make any keyboard entry or use the mouse before the start-up message of the SCSI Configuration Utility appears on the screen following the server reboot.

IMPORTANT: Take a note on the on-screen message before contacting your sales agent. The alarm indication would be a great help for maintenance.

POST Error Messages

When POST detects an error, it displays an error message on the display unit screen. The following table lists error messages and actions to take.

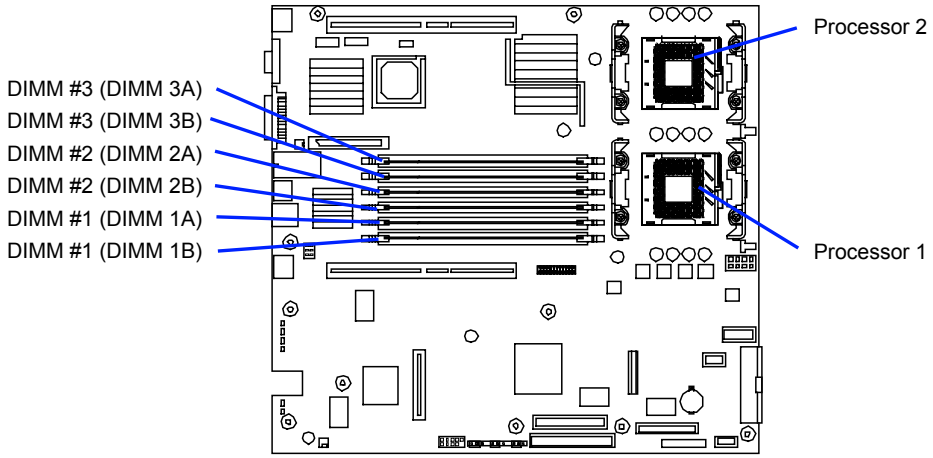
> **IMPORTANT:** Take a note on the messages displayed before consulting with your sales agent. Alarm messages are useful information for maintenance.

On-screen error message		Action
100	Timer Channel 2 Error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
101	Master Interrupt Controller	
102	Slave Interrupt Controller	
103	CMOS Battery Failure	
104	CMOS Option not Set	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board. (Restart the computer, and then execute SETUP to correct the setting.)
105	CMOS/GPNV Checksum Bad	Execute SETUP to correct the setting.
106	CMOS Display Error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
107	Insert Key Pressed	Release the key.
108	Keyboard Locked Message	Reconnect the keyboard.
109	Keyboard Stuck Key	Release the key. Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
10A	Keyboard Interface Error	Reconnect the keyboard. Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
10B	System Memory Size Error	Install the DIMMs correctly. Check if all the installed DIMMs are under the same specification. Contact your sales representative to replace the DIMMs.
10E	External Cache Failure	Install the CPU (processor) correctly. Contact your sales representative to replace the CPU.
110	Floppy Controller Error	Contact your sales representative to replace the floppy disk drive or mother board. This server does not support floppy disk drive B.
111	Floppy A: Error	
112	Floppy B: Error	
113	Hard disk 0 Error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board, SCSI back-plane, or hard disk.
114	Hard disk 1 Error	
115	Hard disk 2 Error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board, SCSI back-plane, or hard disk.
116	Hard disk 3 Error	
117	CD-ROM disk 0 Error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board or the CD-ROM drive.
118	CD-ROM disk 1 Error	
119	CD-ROM disk 2 Error	
11A	CD-ROM disk 3 Error	
11B	Date/Time not set	Activate the BIOS SETUP utility to set the date and time.

On-screen error message		Action
11E	Cache memory bad	Install the CPU (processor) correctly. Contact your sales representative to replace the CPU.
120	NVRAM cleared by Jumper	Activate the BIOS SETUP utility to set the CMOS or password. Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
121	Password clear	
140	PCI Error	Securely install the PCI boards and PCI riser card. Contact your sales representative to replace the PCI board, mother board, or PCI riser card.
141	PCI Memory Allocation Error	
142	PCI IO Allocation Error	
143	PCI IRQ Allocation Error	Activate the BIOS SETUP utility to set the PCI board. Securely install the PCI boards and PCI riser card. Contact your sales representative to replace the PCI board, mother board, or PCI riser card.
144	Shadow of PCI ROM Failed	
145	PCI ROM not found	Securely install the PCI boards and PCI riser card. Contact your sales representative to replace the PCI board, mother board, or PCI riser card.
146	Insufficient Memory to Shadow PCI ROM	For PCI boards which do not need to be bootable, activate the BIOS SETUP utility to disable extension of the expanded ROM on the PCI board. Securely install the PCI boards and PCI riser card. Contact your sales representative to replace the PCI board, mother board, or PCI riser card.
8110	Processor 1 Internal error (IERR)	Securely install the processor. Contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
8111	Processor 2 Internal error (IERR)	
8120	Processor 1 Thermal Trip error	
8121	Processor 2 Thermal Trip error	
8130	Processor 1 disabled	Securely install the processor. Contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
8131	Processor 2 disabled	
8140	Processor 1 failed FRB level 3 timer	
8141	Processor 2 failed FRB level 3 timer	
8150	Processor 1 failed initialization on last boot	Securely install the processor. If the message is displayed each time the system is booted, contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
8151	Processor 2 failed initialization on last boot	
8160	Processor 01: unable to apply BIOS update	Contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
8161	Processor 02: unable to apply BIOS update	
8170	Processor P1 :L2 cache failed	
8171	Processor P2 :L2 cache failed	
8180	BIOS does not support current stepping for Processor P1	
8181	BIOS does not support current stepping for Processor P2	
8190	Watchdog Timer failed on last boot	Securely install the processor. If the message is displayed each time the system is booted, contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
8191	4:1 Core to bus ratio: Processor Cache disabled	
8192	L2 Cache size mismatch	Install processors under the same specification.

On-screen error message		Action
8193	CPUID, Processor Stepping are different	
8194	CPUID, Processor Family are different	
8195	Front Side Bus Speed mismatch. System Halted	Securely install the processor. Contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
8196	Processor Model are different	Install processors under the same specification.
8197	CPU Speed mismatch	
8198	Failed to load processor microcode	Securely install the processor. Contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
8300	Baseboard Management Controller failed to Function	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
8301	Front Panel Controller failed to Function	
8305	Hotswap Controller failed to Function	
8420	Intelligent System Monitoring Chassis Opened	Install the top cover correctly.
84F1	Intelligent System Monitoring Forced Shutdown	Confirm that the system starts normally. If the system is in abnormal state, contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
84F2	Server Management Interface Failed	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
84F3	Baseboard Management Controller in Update Mode	Ask your sales representative for maintenance.
84F4	Sensor Data Record Empty	
84FF	System Event Log Full	Clear the event log by using the BIOS SETUP utility. If the error is not eliminated, contact your sales representative to replace the mother board. The error message is displayed periodically if ESMPRO is not installed. The event log must be cleared periodically.
8500	Bad or missing memory in Slot 3A	Check to see that the all DIMMs are firmly seated in the slot. Contact your service representative to replace the memory or mother board.
8501	Bad or missing memory in Slot 2A	
8502	Bad or missing memory in Slot 1A	
8504	Bad or missing memory in Slot 3B	
8505	Bad or missing memory in Slot 2B	
8506	Bad or missing memory in Slot 1B	
8508	DIMM population error.	Swap DIMM pairs according to the message displayed on the screen.
8601	All memory marked as fail Forcing minimum back online	Check to see that the all DIMMs are firmly seated in the slot. Contact your service representative to replace the memory or mother board.
8306	OS Boot Watchlog Time failure	Contact your service representative.

The following figures show the location of specific components referenced in the POST Error Codes and Messages table.



NOTE: Failed CPU or memory boards can be also identified with the SETUP utility.

Beep Codes

If an error occurs during the POST, the server beeps, indicating the type of error.

Each number indicates the number of short beeps, and a hyphen indicates a pause. For example, the beep interval 1-5-2-2 indicates 1 beep, pause, 2 beeps, pause, 2 beeps, pause, and 3 beeps notifying that no processor is detected on the mother board.

Beeps	Error	Recommended Action
1	Refresh timer error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board
2	Parity error	Check if the DIMM cards are mounted correctly. If the error still occurs when the check result is normal, contact your sales representative to replace the DIMM card or mother board.
3	Base memory failure	
4	System timer error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
5	Processor failure	Contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
6	Keyboard controller error	Check if the keyboard is connected correctly. Contact your sales representative to replace the keyboard or mother board.
7	Processor exception interrupt error	Contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
8	Display memory read/write error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
9	ROM checksum error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
10	Shutdown register error	
11	BIOS disabled	
1-5-1-1	FRB failure	Contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
1-5-2-1	Processor type error	Check if the type of the mounted processor is correct. If the error still occurs when the check result is normal, contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
1-5-2-2	Processor not detected	Check if the processor is mounted correctly. If the error still occurs when the check result is normal, contact your sales representative to replace the processor or mother board.
1-5-4-2	Power failure	Contact your sales representative to replace the power supply unit, power jumper board, or mother board.
1-5-4-3	Chip set control error	Contact your sales representative to replace the mother board.
1-5-4-4	Power control error	Contact your sales representative to replace the power supply unit, power jumper board, or mother board.

SOLVING PROBLEMS

When the server fails to operate as expected, see the following to find out your problem and follow the instruction given before asking for repair.

If the server still fails to operate successfully after solving your problem, take a note on the on-screen message and contact your sales agent.

Problems with the Server

Fail to power on the server:

- ❑ Is the server is properly supplied with power?
  - → Check if the power cord is connected to a power outlet (or UPS) that meets the power specifications for the server.
  - → Make sure to use the power cord provided with the server. Check the power cord for broken shield or bent plugs.
  - → Make sure the power breaker for the connected power outlet is on.
  - → If the power cord is plugged to a UPS, make sure the UPS is powered and it outputs power. See the manual that comes with the UPS for details.

    Power supply to the server may be linked with the connected UPS using the BIOS SETUP utility of the server.

    <Menu to check: [Server] - [AC-Link]>
- ❑ Did you press the POWER switch?
  - → Press the POWER switch on the front of the server to turn of the power (the POWER lamp lights).

Fail to power off the server:

- ❑ Is the POWER switch enabled?
  - → Restart the server and start the BIOS SETUP utility.

    <Menu to check: [Security] - [Power Switch Inhibit]>
- ❑ Is the server running in the Secure Mode?
  - → The POWER switch is disabled in the Secure Mode. (Forced shutdown is also not available.) To release the Secure Mode, enter the password specified with the BIOS SETUP utility.

No screen display appears with beep:

→ Check whether DIMMs are connected to the mating connectors firmly.

→ Check whether DIMMs of different specifications are installed in the specific bank. See Chapter 9 for the specifications of DIMMs.

→ DIMMs must be populated in pairs and in the following order:
1A and 1B, 2A and 2B, then 3A and 3B.

→ Installed DIMMs must be the same speed and must all be registered.

→ Take a note of beep code pattern, and take appropriate action according to the table listed earlier in "Beep Codes".

POST fails to complete:

❑ Is the DIMM board installed?

→ At least two DIMM boards are required for operation.

→ Installed DIMMs must be the same speed and must all be registered.

❑ Is the memory size large?

→ The memory check may take a few seconds if the memory size is large. Wait for a while.

❑ Did you perform any keyboard or mouse operation immediately after you started the server?

→ If you perform any keyboard or mouse operation immediately after start-up, POST may accidentally detect a keyboard controller error and stops proceeding. In such a case, restart the server once again. Do not perform any keyboard or mouse operation until the BIOS start-up message appears when you restart the server.

❑ Does the server have contains appropriate memory boards or PCI devices?

→ Operation of the server with unauthorized devices is not guaranteed.

Fail to access to internal or external devices (or such devices fail to operate):

- ❑ Are cables properly connected?

  → Make sure that the interface cables and power cord are properly connected. Also make sure that the cables are connected in the correct order.

- ❑ Is the power-on order correct?

  → When the server has any external devices connected, power on the external devices first, then the server.

- ❑ Did you install drivers for connected optional devices?

  → Some optional devices require specific device drivers. Refer to the manual that comes with the device to install its driver.

- ❑ Is BIOS configuration correct?

  → When the server has PCI devices connected, make sure to set the PCI device interrupt and others with the BIOS SETUP utility of the server. (Most PCI devices generally do not require any change to the configuration, but some boards do require specific settings. Refer to the manual that comes with the board for details to make correct settings.

  <Menus to check: [Advanced] - [PCI Configuration] - [PCI Slot xx ROM]
  x: PCI slot number>

  → Some devices connected to the serial or parallel port may require I/O port address or operation mode settings. Refer to the manual that comes with the board for details to make correct settings.

  <Menu to check: [Advanced] - [Peripheral Configuration]>

The POWER switch and sleep feature are disabled:

- ❑ Is the server in the Secure Mode?

  → In the Secure Mode, the POWER switch and sleep feature are disabled. To release the Secure Mode, enter the password specified with the BIOS SETUP utility.

The keyboard or mouse fails to operate:

- ❑ Is the cable properly connected?

  → You must use the provided keyboard/mouse branch cable (Y cable) for this server. Make sure that the provided cable is connected to the correct connector on the rear of the server.

  → The keyboard or mouse does not operate if it is connected when the server is powered (not applicable to USB devices). Power of the server first and connect it properly.

- ❑ Is BIOS configuration correct?

  → The keyboard and mouse may be disabled with the BIOS SETUP utility of the server. Check the settings with the BIOS SETUP utility.

  <Menus to check: [Advanced] - [Numlock]>

- ❑ Are the server drivers installed?

  → Refer to the manual that comes with your OS to check that the keyboard and mouse drivers are installed. (These drivers are installed along with the OS.) Some OS's allow you to change the keyboard and mouse settings. Refer to manual that comes with your OS to check that the keyboard and mouse settings are correct.

- ❑ Is the server in the Secure Mode?

  → In the Secure Mode, the keyboard and mouse are disabled. To release the Secure Mode, enter the password specified with the BIOS SETUP utility.

Fail to access (read or write) to the floppy disk:

- ❑ Does the floppy disk drive contain a floppy disk?

  → Insert a floppy disk into the floppy disk drive until it clicks.

- ❑ Is the floppy disk write-protected?

  → Place the write-protect switch on the floppy disk to the "Write-enabled" position.

- ❑ Is the floppy disk formatted?

  → Use a formatted floppy disk or format the floppy disk in the floppy disk drive. Refer to the manual that comes with the OS for formatting a floppy disk.

- ❑ Is BIOS configuration correct?

  → The floppy disk drive may be disabled with the BIOS SETUP utility of the server. Check the setting with the BIOS SETUP utility.

  <Menus to check:
  [Main] - [Floppy A]
  [Security] - [Diskette Write Protect]

- ❑ Is the server in the Secure Mode?

  → In the Secure Mode, write access to the floppy disk may be disabled. To release the Secure Mode, enter the password specified with the BIOS SETUP utility.

Fail to access to the CD-ROM:

- ❑ Is the CD-ROM properly set in the CD-ROM drive tray?

  → The tray is provided with a holder to secure the CD-ROM. Make sure that the CD-ROM is placed properly in the holder.

- ❑ Is the CD-ROM applicable to the server?

  → The CD-ROM for Macintosh is not available for use.

Inserted the correct CD-ROM but the message like the following is displayed:

```
The CD-ROM is not inserted or the wrong CD-ROM is inserted.
Please insert the correct CD-ROM.
OK
```

- ❑ Is the data side of the CD-ROM dirty or injured?

  → Take the CD-ROM out of the CD-ROM drive, confirm that it is not dirty or injured, reset and click [OK].

Fail to access the hard disk:
(Refer to the documentation supplied with the disk array controller.)

- ❑ Is the hard disk applicable to the server?

  → Operation of any device that is not authorized by NEC is not guaranteed.

- ❑ Is the hard disk properly installed?

  → Make sure to lock the hard disk with the lever on its handle. The hard disk is not connected to the internal connector when it is not completely installed (see Chapter 9).

Fail to access the external SCSI devices:

- ❑ Is the SCSI device applicable to the server?

  → Operation of any SCSI device that is not authorized by NEC is not guaranteed.

- ❑ Are SCSI devices properly configured?

  → When the server has external SCSI devices connected, hard disk settings, including SCSI ID and terminator, are required. Refer to the manual that comes with the SCSI device for details.

- ❑ Are the SCSI controllers (including optional controllers) properly configured?

  → Use the BIOS SETUP utility for proper configuration of SCSI devices connected to the SCSI connector on the mother board. When the server has an optional SCSI controller installed and SCSI devices connected to it, use the BIOS SETUP utility that comes with the optional SCSI controller for proper configuration. See the manual that comes with the optional SCSI controller for details.

Cannot install the operating system correctly.

- ❑ Did you confirm the notes on installing the operating system?

  → See Chapter 6.

Fail to start the OS:

- ❑ Is a floppy disk in the floppy disk drive?

  → Take out the floppy disk and restart the server.

- ❑ Is the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive?

  → Take out the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and restart the server.

- ❑ Is the OS broken?

  → Use recovery process to recover the system. (See "Recovery for Windows 2000 System" in this Chapter.)

The server is not found on the network:

- ❑ Is the LAN cable connected?

  → Make sure to connect the LAN cable to the network port on the rear of the server. Also make sure that the LAN cable to use conforms with the network interface standard.

- ❑ Is BIOS configuration correct?

  → The internal LAN controller may be disabled with the BIOS SETUP utility of the server. Check the setting with the BIOS SETUP utility.

  <Menus to check:

  [Advanced] - [PCI Configuration] - [Onboard NIC] - [Onboard NIC 1 ROM], [Onboard NIC 2 ROM]>

- ❑ Have the protocol and service already configured?

  → Install the distinctive network driver for the server. Make sure that the protocol, such as TCP/IP, and services are properly specified.

- ❑ Is the transfer speed correct?

  → Open the network property dialog box in control panel to specify the "Link Speed & Duplex" value the same as the value specified for HUB.

Windows 2000

During Windows 2000 installation, the following warning is registered in the System Log of the Event Viewer:

```
Error detected on the device \Device\CdRom0
during the paging operation.
```

→ There is no problem on this issue.

Fail to start the OS:

❑ Is a floppy disk in the floppy disk drive?

→ Take out the floppy disk and restart the server.

❑ Is the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive?

→ Take out the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and restart the server.

❑ Is the OS broken?

→ Use recovery process to recover the system. (See "Recovery for Windows 2000 System" in this Chapter.)

The event log after every logon to Windows 2000 includes the following error log:

```
Description (D)
The CPUs in this multiprocessor system are not all the same revision level.
To use all processors the operating system restricts itself to the features of
the least capable processor in the system. Should problems occur with
this system, contact the CPU manufacture to see if this mix of processors
is supported.
```

❑ Has the CPU been expanded?

→ If the different revision (stepping) of the processor is installed in the multiprocessor system, Windows 2000 logs the above information every startup. If this message is logged, it is no problem for operation.

The OS presents unstable operation:

❑ Did you update the system?

→ Installing a network drive after installation of the OS may cause unstable operation. Use the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM to update the system. (See Chapter 6.)

The system does not restart automatically when a stop error occurs, though the system is adjusted to automatically restarting.

→ When the system does not restart automatically, restart it manually.

The system restarts automatically when a stop error occurs, though the system is NOT adjusted to automatically restarting.

→ There is no problem about this issue.
Check the System Event Log to confirm that STOP error occurred.

Cannot turn the power OFF at the blue screen:

→ If you want to turn off the power at the blue screen, execute forced shutdown (forced shutdown: continue to press POWER switch for 4 seconds). The power will not be turned off if you press the switch for less than 3 seconds.

The event log after every logon to Windows 2000 includes the following error log:

Description (D) The CPUs in this multiprocessor system are not all the same revision level. To use all processors the operating system restricts itself to the features of the least capable processor in the system. Should problems occur with this system, contact the CPU manufacture to see if this mix of processors is supported.

❑ Has the CPU been expanded?

→ If the different revision (stepping) of the processor is installed in the multiprocessor system, Windows 2000 logs the above information every startup. If this message is logged, it is no problem for operation.

The OS presents unstable operation:

❑ Did you update the system?

→ Installing a network drive after installation of the OS may cause unstable operation. Use the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM to update the system. (See Chapter 6.)

When any trouble occurred, the system does not run according to the specification of "Restart automatically":

→ When any trouble occurred on Windows 2000, the system may not restart automatically even if "Restart automatically" is specified. In such case, restart the system manually.

Cannot turn the power OFF at the blue screen:

→ If you want to turn off the power at the blue screen, execute forced power off (forced shut down: continue to press POWER switch for 4 seconds). The power will not be turned off if you press the switch just one time.

Problems with NEC EXPRESSBUILDER

When the server is not booted from the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM, check the following:

- ❑ Did you set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER during POST and restart the server?

  → If you do not set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER during POST and restart the server, an error message will appear or the OS will boot.

- ❑ Is BIOS configuration correct?

  → The boot device order may be specified with the BIOS SETUP utility of the server. Use the BIOS SETUP utility to change the boot device order to boot the system from the CD-ROM drive first.

  <Menu to check: [Boot]>

- ❑ Is an error message appeared?

  → When an error occurs while the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER is in progress, the following message appears. After this message appears, check the error and take the appropriate corrective action according to the message listed in the table below.

Message	Cause and Remedy
This machine is not supported.	This NEC EXPRESSBUILDER version is not designed for this server. Execute the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER on the compliant server.
NvRAM access error	An access to the nonvolatile memory (NvRAM) is not acceptable.
Hard disk access error	The hard disk is not connected or it is failed. Check whether the hard disk is correctly connected.
The system-specific information does not exist on the baseboard. Please restore the backup data or write the data by using [System Information Management] of the Off-line Maintenance Utility. Only the authorized personnel are allowed to do this operation.	The system-specific information can't be acquired in the mother board exchange and so on.

Problems with Express Setup

Following message appeared when you tried to install Express Setup to the hard disk that has smaller capacity than the specified partition size:

```
The specified partition size has exceeded the capacity of the hard disk.
The setup created the partition at the maximum size that can be reserved on the hard disk.
Setup will continue the process.
OK
```

→ It is not an abnormal condition. Press **Enter** to continue the installation.

The message can not be displayed correctly when copying the files from CD-ROM or checking CD-ROM:

→ Press **R**. When the message appears again even if you press **R**, restart the Express Setup from the beginning. In case the same result occurred after the restart of installation, contact Maintenance Service Company and ask them to check the CD-ROM drive.

Express Setup terminated and asks to input setup information.

→ There are some errors on the specified setup information.
Follow the instruction to input the correct value. It is not necessary to cancel the installation. On Windows 2000, you might be asked to press Enter again after the last reboot of the setup.

[Complete] appears on the [Role of Computer] screen.

→ If you click [Complete] here, the setup will select the default value of Express Setup for the later specification to continue the process.

<The Default Value>

The specification of network protocol

Protocol :	TCP/IP[DHCP Specified]
Service :	Select sharing Microsoft network files and printer.
Client :	Microsoft network client.
Component :	SNMP, IIS (Excluding Professional)
Application :	NEC ESMPRO Agent
	Power Console Plus
	(if optional RAID controller is installed in the system)

The following error log is included in the event log while operating the system:

Event ID: 16
Source: iANSMiniport
Type: Error
Category: None
Description: Team #0:The last adapter has lost link.
Network connection has been lost.

→ Though the above error is included in the event log when specifying the teaming, the LAN driver can work properly.

[Complete] does not appear on [Role of Computer] screen.

→ The [Complete] does not appear if the Setup File that has already been created is loaded.

→ [Complete] appears only when you first entered the [Role of Computer] screen. Once you go to the next screen from [Role of Computer], the [Complete] will not appear even if you enter [Back] to go back to the [Role of Computer] screen.

Select [Use Existing Array] at [New/Existing RAID Configuration], but the OS is installed in the whole area of the disk.

→ Is there any other partition than the partition to re-use (excluding maintenance area)? If the partition other than the one to re-use does not exist, the setup will reserve the whole area of the disk to install Windows 2000.

Specified to join the Domain, but the system is installed as Workgroup.

→ When the setup fails to join the Domain during the installation, it will install the system as Workgroup. Open [System] in Control Panel to specify joining the Domain.

Specified large value as partition size, but when Windows 2000 is actually started, the system partition is created by 4095MB.

→ Is the [Partition Size] specified by the value larger than the real area? If you want to create one partition in all area of the hard disk(excluding the maintenance area) to install the OS, specify [All Area].

Windows 2000 started with different display resolution from the specified value.

→ If the specified display resolution can not be used, the system will use the nearest value or the default value of the driver.

Entered the incorrect Product ID/CD key.

→ Even if you entered the incorrect Product ID/CD key, Express Setup will start. However, the setup will stop and asks you to re-enter the correct value. Also in this case, input request will occur when rebooting after GUI setup completed during Express Setup. If these 2 inputs are done correctly, there is no problem on Windows 2000 setup.

Unable to specify the details of Network adapter.

→ In Express Setup, you can not specify the details of Network adapter. Specify them from Control Panel after starting Windows 2000.

Windows 2000 is started with Network adapter that has not been specified during Express Setup

→ Windows 2000 will install the recognized Network adapter specified as default value. If you want to modify the specification, it can be done from Control Panel after starting Windows 2000. Also, the Network adapter that has been specified during Express Setup but that is not connected will not be setup, though the protocol will only be installed.

Connected more than two Network adapter and specified different protocol for each adapter, but all the protocols are specified on either adapter.

→ It's a design. Each adapter is specified so that all the installed protocols can be used. The value that can not be specified during Express Setup will all be specified by default value.

When more than two Network adapter are specified, the detailed specification of TCP/IP protocol are all set to use DHCP.

→ When more than two Network adapter are specified, the detailed specification of the protocol may all be set by default value. Re-specify the details from Control Panel.

Not more than two Network adapter is connected, but the detailed specification of the protocol are all set by default.(e.g. Specified IP Address on TCP/IP, but DHCP is specified)

→ Are you specifying more than two protocols?
In this case, the situation will be the same as connecting more than two Network adapter, so the detailed specification of the protocol are all set by default.
Re-specify the details from Control Panel after starting the OS.

Problems with Master Control Menu

The master control menu fails to appear:

- ❑ Is your system Windows NT 4.0 or later, or Windows 95 or later?

  → The CD-ROM Autorun feature is supported by Windows NT 4.0 and Windows 95. The older versions do not automatically start from the CD-ROM.

- ❑ Is **Shift** pressed?

  → Setting the CD-ROM with **Shift** pressed down cancels the Autorun feature.

- ❑ Is the system in the proper state?

  → The menu may not appear depending on the system registry setting or the timing to set the CD-ROM. In such a case, start the Explorer and run \MC\1ST.EXE in the CD-ROM.

Problems with Configuration Diskette Creator

The bit map of the Configuration Diskette Creator window is not displayed correctly during setting of setup information. (When the Trekking command is used)

→ If the specified number of colors is fewer than 256 in the display setting, the bit map is not displayed correctly, but the setup information can be displayed correctly.

The Point to Point tunneling protocol cannot be set.

→ The protocol is not supported at present. After installation, set the protocol through Control Panel. In this case, rebooting is not necessary.

The details of a network adapter cannot be set.

→ Configuration Diskette Creator is unable to set the details of network adapters. Start Windows 2000/2003, and set the details through Control Panel.

More than one network board is connected during setting of setup information, but TCP/IP cannot be set for each network.

→ Perform the installation procedure during DHCP setting. To create a temporary IP configuration, perform the installation procedure during DHCP setting, and then set TCP/IP again through Control Panel.

Problem with Disk Array

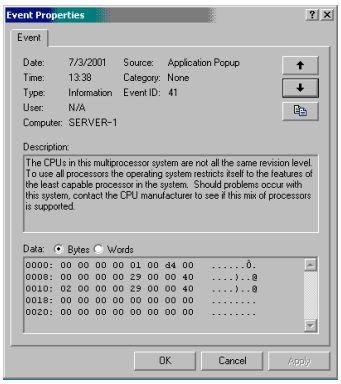
Refer to the manual that comes with the disk array controller for any trouble occurred on disk array in this system.

COLLECTING EVENT LOG

This section describes on how to collect the log of various events that occurred on the server.

IMPORTANT: If STOP error, system error, or stall occurred, follow the procedure below after restarting the system.

NOTE: The different revision processor may be mixed in additional CPU kit. When Windows 2000 is used, following message may be appeared in the System Log of the Event Viewer after extension the different revision of two or more CPUs in the NEC Express server. If this message is logged, it is no problem for operation.


Event Properties
Event
Date: 7/3/2001 Source: Application Popup
Time: 13:38 Category: None
Type: Information Event ID: 41
User: N/A
Computer: SERVER-1
Description:
The CPUs in this multiprocessor system are not all the same revision level. To use all processors the operating system restricts itself to the features of the least capable processor in the system. Should problems occur with this system, contact the CPU manufacturer to see if this mix of processors is supported.
Data: Bytes Words
0000: 00 00 00 00 01 00 d4 00 .....Ô.
0008: 00 00 00 00 29 00 00 40 ....)..@
0010: 02 00 00 00 29 00 00 40 ....)..@
0018: 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 ....
0020: 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 ....
OK
Cancel
Apply

1. Click [Management Tool] → [Event Viewer] from the Control Panel.
2. Select the type of the log to collect.

   On [Application Log], the events related to the running application is archived. On [Security Log], the events related to the security is archived. On [System Log], the events occurred at the item which configures Windows 2000 system is archived.
3. Click [Save as...] in the [Run] menu.
4. Input the file name of archived log in the [File Name] box.
5. Select the type of the log file you want to save in the [File Type] list box and click [OK].

For more information, refer to Windows 2000 Online Help.

COLLECTING CONFIGURATION INFORMATION

This section describes on how to collect the information on hardware configuration and inside specification.

In order to collect information, "Diagnostic Program" is used.

IMPORTANT: If STOP error, system error, or stall occurred, follow the procedure below after restarting the system.

1. Point to [Settings] in Start menu, and click [Control Panel].

   The [Control Panel] dialog box appears.

2. Double-click [Management Tool], and double-click [Computer Management].

   The [Computer Management] dialog box appears.

3. Click [System Tool] → [System Information].
4. Click [Save as System Information File] in the [Operation] menu.
5. Input the file name to save in the [File Name] box.
6. Click [Save].

COLLECTING DR. WATSON DIAGNOSTIC INFORMATION

Dr. Watson collects diagnostic information related to application errors. The location to save the information can be specified as you like. For more information, refer to Chapter 5.

MEMORY DUMP

If an error occurs, the dump file should be saved to acquire necessary information.

If you saved the dump to DAT, write down that it is saved as "NTBackup" or "ARCServe" on the label. You can specify the location to save the diagnostic information as you like.. For more information, refer to "Specifying Memory Dump (Debug Information (refer to Chapter 5 for detail)".

IMPORTANT:

- Consult with your sales agent before dumping the memory. Dumping the memory while the server is in the successful operation may affect the system operation.
- Restarting the system due to an error may display a message indicating insufficient virtual memory. Ignore this message and proceed. Restarting the system may result in dumping improper data.

Preparing for Memory Dumping

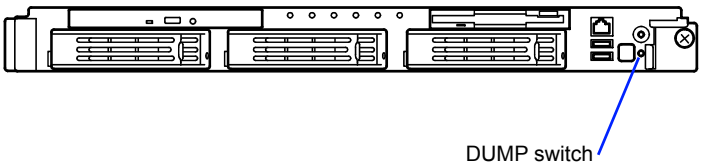
Memory dumping with the DUMP switch may disable the server to restart. In such a case, it is required to force the server to shut down. This forced shutdown, however, is not available if "Enable" is selected for "Power Switch Inhibit" on the Security menu of the BIOS setup utility, SETUP, because this setting disables POWER switch operation.

Follow the procedure below to change the setting to enable the forced shutdown and restart of the server.

1. Power on the server and start the BIOS setup utility, SETUP.
2. Select "Disable" for "Power Switch Inhibit" in the Security menu.
3. Save the configuration data and exit the SETUP.

Saving the Dump File

Press the DUMP switch to save the dump file when an error occurs. Insert a metal pin (a straightened large paper clip will make a substitute) into the switch hole to press the DUMP switch.



Pressing the DUMP switch saves the dump file in the specified directory. (Memory dumping may not be available when the CPU stalls.)

IMPORTANT: Do not use a toothpick or plastic stick that is easy to break. Do not use any pin easily broken such as a toothpick or plastic pin.

BACKUP IPMI INFORMATION

This section describes on how to collect IPMI information. To collect the information, NEC ESMPRO Agent must be installed.

1. Select [Program] → [ESMPRO Agent] → [ESRAS Utility] from the Start pop-up menu.

   The [ESRAS Utility] window appears.

2. Select [Latest Information] from the Tree View to collect the information of local computer.

   If the data is displayed, it means the data is collected normally.

3. Click [Backup Current IPMI Information] from the [File] menu.

4. Confirm the computer name to backup the information.

5. Specify the backup file name to save and the location to save it, and click [Backup].

RECOVERY FOR Windows 2000 SYSTEM

If any file necessary for running the OS is damaged, use the following procedures to recover the system.

IMPORTANT:

- After recovering the system, see "Updating the System" in Chapter 5 and be sure to update the system.
  Also on Windows 2000, you need to update all the drivers after the system update. For more information, see "Installing and Setting Device Drivers" in Chapter 5.
- If the hard disk can not be recognized, you can not recover the system.

Follow the procedure below and use the information in the disk, not system recovery disk, to recover the system.

1. Turn on the system power.
2. Insert the Windows 2000 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Press **Ctrl** + **Alt** + **Delete** to reset the system.

   After a bootable operating system has been installed on the hard disk, press **Enter** while the message "Press any key to boot from CD..." is displayed at the top of the screen.

   If no bootable operating system exists on the hard disk, this step is unnecessary.

   The Windows 2000 setup screen will appear.

   If the screen is not displayed, **Enter** was not pressed properly.

   Begin after turning on the system power again.
4. Press **F6** in a few seconds when the window is in either of the following states.
   - "Setup is inspecting your computer's hardware configuration ..." is displayed.
   - A screen with a solid blue background is displayed.

   IMPORTANT: There is no visible indication on screen when **F6** has been pressed.

5. When the following message is displayed, press **S**.

```
Setup could not determine the type of one or more mass storage devices
installed in your system, or you have chosen to manually specify an adapter.
Currently, Setup will load support for the following mass storage devices.
```

The following message is displayed.

```
Please inert the disk labeled
manufacturer-supplied hardware support disk
into Drive A:
*Press ENTER when ready.
```

6. Insert the Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER into the floppy drive, and press **Enter**.

A list of mass storage devices is displayed.

7. Select the proper SCSI Adapter and press **Enter**.

- MegaRAID SCSI 320-1 Controller Driver
  (When N8103-80F board is installed.)
- MegaRAID SCSI 320-2 Controller Driver
  (When N8103-81F board is installed.)

8. Press **R** to select the recovery option.
9. Select the keyboard.
10. If you are requested, press **R** to select system recovery procedure.
11. If you are requested, select either of the procedure below:

[Manual Recovery] (Press **M**)

Do not select this option unless you are a high-level user or a system administrator. If you use this option, you can recover the problems of system files, partition boot sector, and start-up environment.

[Quick Recovery] (Press **F**)

This option is very easy to use and the user does not need to do anything during the procedure. If you select this option, the system recovery disk program starts to recover the problems concerning system files, partition boot sector of system disk, and start-up environment (if multiple operating systems are installed on the system).

12. Follow the instruction displayed on the screen, and then press **L** at the screen which request you to insert system recovery disk. The system will be restarted once.

> **NOTE:** Starts the procedure without system recovery disk.

13. Repeat steps 1 to 11.

The recovery procedure will be started.

During the recovery, the missing files and the damaged files are replaced either to the files in C:\ I386 folder of hard disk or the files in systemroot\ Repair of the system partition. These replaced files do not reflect the changes of the configuration after the setup at all.

14. Follow the instruction displayed on the screen.

If you take a note of any file name in which trouble is detected during the procedure, it is useful to diagnose how the system has been damaged.

15. Terminates the procedure if the recovery is successful.

You can verify that the replaced files are correctly copied to the hard disk if the computer is restarted normally.

OFF-LINE MAINTENANCE UTILITY

The Off-line Maintenance Utility is an OS-independent maintenance program. When you are unable to start the OS-dependent NEC ESMPRO to troubleshoot a problem, the Off-line Maintenance Utility can be used.

IMPORTANT:

- The Off-line Maintenance Utility is intended for use of your sales agent. The NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and the Off-line Maintenance Utility Bootable FD you have created contain a file that describes operation of the utility, but do not attempt to use the utility by yourself. Contact your sales agent and follow instructions.
- Starting the Off-line Maintenance Utility disables any access from a client to the server.

Starting the Off-line Maintenance Utility

The Off-line Maintenance Utility may be started in many ways.

You can set the Off-line Maintenance Utility to automatically start at an error occurrence in addition to starting it manually.

> **IMPORTANT:** Do not start the Off-line Maintenance Utility while the server is in successful operation.

- From the CD-ROM

  Set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and reboot the system.

  After the menu is displayed on the screen, select "Tools" - "Off-line Maintenance Utility".

  The Off-line Maintenance Utility program starts from the CD-ROM.

- From the floppy disk

  Set the Off-line Maintenance Utility Bootable FD in the floppy disk drive and reboot the system.

  The Off-line Maintenance Utility program starts from the boot disk.

  The Off-line Maintenance Utility Bootable FD is created by selecting "Tools" - "Create Support FD" on the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

- Manual start (by pressing **F4**)

  When the Off-line Maintenance Utility is installed, press **F4** while the start-up screen of the server is on screen. The Off-line Maintenance Utility starts from the hard disk.

- Automatic start (OS panic)

  When a critical error occurs during OS operation, shut down and restart the system. The Off-line Maintenance Utility automatically starts. (You need to select "Start the Off-line Maintenance Utility when an error occurs." in the NEC ESMPRO Agent beforehand.)

- Automatic start (OS boot retry out)

  If the OS boot monitoring feature is enabled, the Off-line Maintenance Utility automatically starts when after three consecutive OS boot failures.

Features of Off-line Maintenance Utility

The Off-line Maintenance Utility provides the following features. (Available features vary depending on the way you started the Off-line Maintenance Utility.)

> **IMPORTANT:** See the on-line help for details of the Off-line Maintenance Utility. For further information, ask your sales agent.

- IPMI Information Viewer

  Provides the functions to view the system event log (SEL), sensor data record (SDR), and field replaceable unit (FRU) and to make a backup copy of them.

  Using this feature, you can find system errors and events to determine a maintenance part.

- BIOS Setup Viewer

  Provides the functions to export the current configuration data defined with the SETUP utility to a text file.

- System Information Viewer

  Provides the functions to view information on the processor and the BIOS and export it to a text file.

- System Information Management

  Provides the function to make a back-up copy of your data.

  Without the backup data, the system-specific information and/or configuration may not be restored.

  Only the authorized personnel is allowed to restore the backup data.

- Start of Utilities

  With the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER, you can start the following utilities installed in the maintenance partition.

  – System Management

  – System Diagnostics

  – Maintenance Partition Update

- Chassis Identify

  The lamp on the machine is flashed for five seconds. This is convenient if you have to distinguish a machine among many machines on the rack.

RESETTING THE SERVER

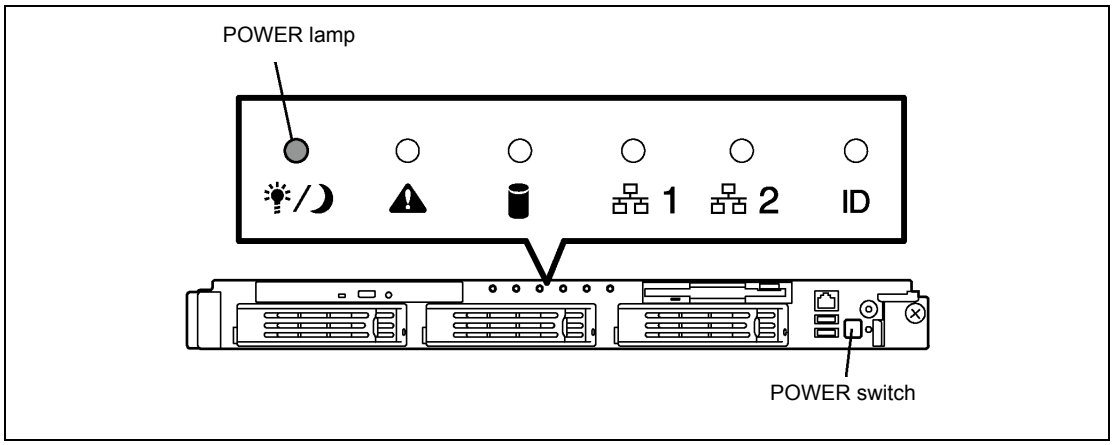
If the server halts before starting the OS, press and hold **Ctrl** and **Alt** and press **Delete**. This restarts the server.

> **IMPORTANT:** Resetting the server clears the DIMM memory and the data in process. To reset the server when it is not frozen, make sure that no processing is in progress.

FORCED SHUTDOWN

Use this function when an OS command does not shut down the server, the POWER switch does not turn off the server, or resetting does not work.

Press and hold the POWER switch on the server for at least four seconds. The power is forcibly turned off. To turn on the power back again, wait approximately 10 seconds after turning off the power (forced shutdown).



> **IMPORTANT:** If the remote power-on function is used, cycle the power once to load the OS, and turn off the power again in the normal way.

Chapter 9

Upgrading Your Server

This chapter describes internal optional devices available for the server, procedures for install or removing such optional devices, and notes on using them.

IMPORTANT:

- Optional devices described in this chapter may be installed or removed by any user. However, NEC does not assume any liability for damage to optional devices or the server or malfunctions of the server resulted from installation by the user. NEC recommends you ask your sales agent for install or removing any optional devices.
- Make sure to use only optional devices and cables authorized by NEC. Repair of the server due to malfunctions, failures, or damage resulted from installing such devices or cables will be charged.
- When you made any change to the hardware configuration, make sure to update the system (see Chapter 5 for details.).

SAFETY NOTES

Observe the following notes to install or remove optional devices safely and properly.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may result in death or serious personal injury. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Do not disassemble, repair, or alter the server.
- Do not look into the CD-ROM drive.
- Do not remove the lithium battery.
- Disconnect the power plug before working with the server.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may cause a fire, personal injury, or property damage. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

- Avoid installation in extreme temperature conditions.
- Make sure to complete board installation.
- Do not lift the server only by a single person.
- Do not install the server on the rack leaving the cover removed.
- Do not install the server on the rack halfway.

ANTI-STATIC MEASURES

The server contains electronic components sensitive to static electricity. Avoid failures caused by static electricity when installing or removing any optional devices.

- Wear a wrist strap (an arm belt or anti-static glove).

  Wear a wrist strap on your wrist. If no wrist strap is available, touch an unpainted metal part of the cabinet before touching a component to discharge static electricity from your body.

  Touch a metal part regularly when working with components to discharge static electricity.

- Select a suitable work space.
  - Work with the server on the anti-static or concrete floor.
  - When you work with the server on a carpet where static electricity is likely to be generated, make sure take anti-static measures beforehand.
- Use a work table.

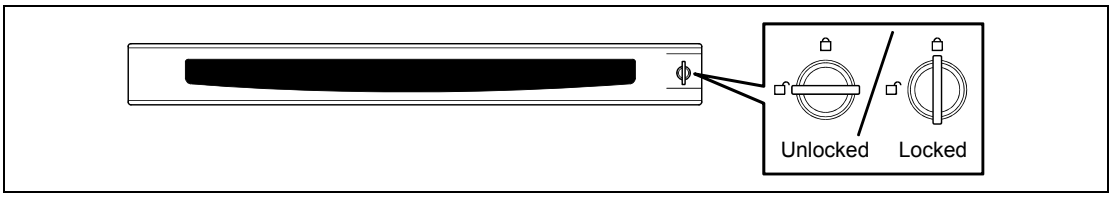
  Place the server on an anti-static mat to work with it.

- Cloth
  - Do not wear a wool or synthetic cloth to work with the server.
  - Wear anti-static shoes to work with the server.
  - Take off any jewels (a ring, bracelet, or wrist watch) before working with the server.
- Handling of components
  - Keep any component in an anti-static bag until you actually install it to the server.
  - Hold any component by its edge to avoid touching any terminals or parts.
  - To store or carry any component, place it in an anti-static bag.

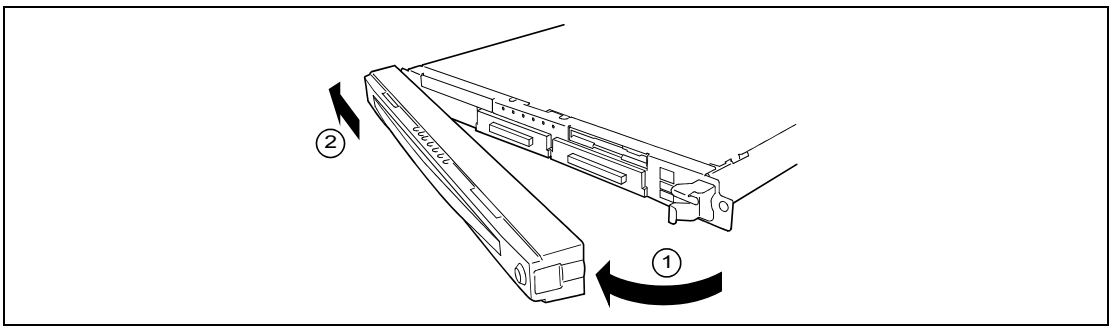
PREPARING YOUR SYSTEM FOR UPGRADE

Follow the procedure below to prepare for installing or removing components.

1. Prepare the Phillips screwdriver.
2. Shut down the OS.
3. Unlock the front bezel.



4. Remove the front bezel.
5. Press the POWER switch to power off the server (the POWER lamp goes off).
6. Remove all cables and power cords from the server.



DEVICE INSTALLATION OR REMOVAL PROCEDURE

Install or remove a component from the server in the following procedure.

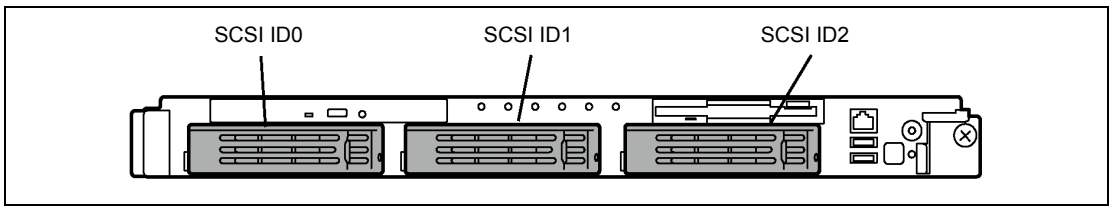
Hard Disk Drive

The server has three device bay slots to install hard disks with the SCA2 interface (Ultra 160 SCSI) in the disk bay of the front of the server.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not use any hard disks that are not authorized by NEC. Installing a third-party hard disk may cause a failure of the server as well as the hard disk. Purchase hard disks of the following models:
  - N8150-161F (18.1 GB, 10,000 rpm, Ultra 320)
  - N8150-162F (36.3 GB, 10,000 rpm, Ultra 320)
  - N8150-163F (73.2 GB, 10,000 rpm, Ultra 320)
  - N8150-171F (146 GB, 10,000 rpm, Ultra 320)
  - N8150-164F (18.1 GB, 15,000 rpm, Ultra 320)
  - N8150-165F (36.3 GB, 15,000 rpm, Ultra 320)
  - N8150-172F (73.2 GB, 15,000 rpm, Ultra 320)
- To make array configuration, specify RAID0, RAID1, RAID5 or RAID0+1 as the RAID level.

All seven slots may contain a hard disk approximately 25.4 mm (1 inch) high. The SCSI IDs of ID0 through ID2 are always assigned to hard disks as shown below.



The hard disk drive bays are connected to the SCSI connector on the mother board when the server is shipped. To use the hard disk drives in a disk array configuration, reconnect the cable from the connector on the mother board to which the SCSI controller is connected to the disk array controller connector. For the cable reconnection, see "Disk Array Controller".

A dummy block is installed in the hard disk drive bays except the one with SCSI ID0 defined. The purpose of a dummy block is to increase the cooling effect in the server. Install a dummy block in slots not containing a hard disk drive.

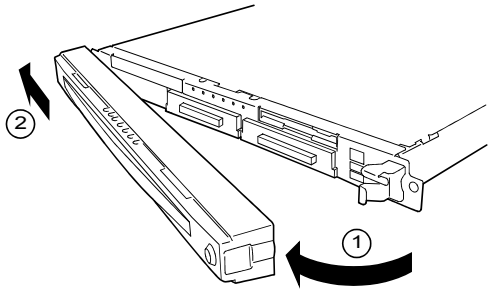
Installation

Take the following steps to install a hard disk drive. This procedure applies to all the hard disk drive bays. See the next section for the procedure installing a hard disk drive in the flex bay.

NOTE: Any hard disk can be installed or removed in or from the server only by removing the front bezel.

IMPORTANT: In the disk array configuration, use the hard disks having the same specification including the capacity.

1. See the section "Preparing for Installation and Removal" described earlier to prepare.
2. Unlock the front bezel with the security key and remove the front bezel.

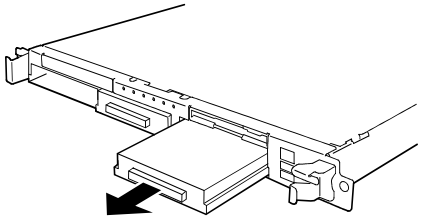


3. Locate the slot in which you are going to install a hard disk drive.

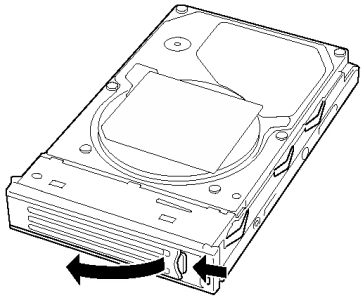
   The server has three slots. Install hard disk drives in ascending order of the SCSI ID numbers starting from the leftmost slot. The SCSI IDs assigned to the slots are all determined.

4. Remove the dummy block if installed.

IMPORTANT: Keep the dummy block for future use.



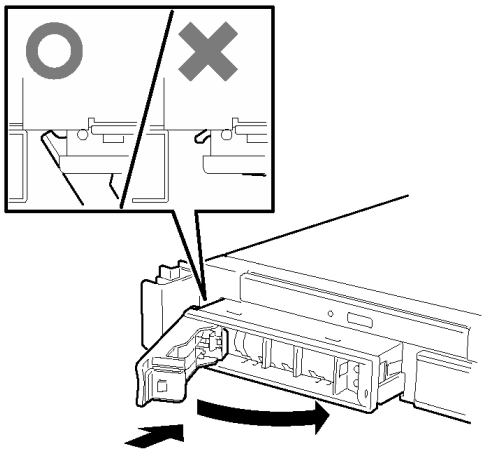
5. Unlock the hard disk drive handle.



6. Firmly hold the additional hard disk drive (with the tray provided) and handle, and insert it into the slot.

IMPORTANT:

- Push the hard disk drive until it docks with the SCSI backplane connector.
- Carefully hold the hard disk drive with both hands.



7. Slowly close the handle.

The handle is locked when a "click" is heard.

IMPORTANT: Be careful not to get your finger caught between the handle and tray.

NOTE: Confirm that the handle is hooked to the frame when having inserted the hard disk drive.

8. Power on the server, start the SETUP utility, select [Boot] → [Hard Disk], and set the boot priority in the submenu.

This operation is necessary because installing an additional hard disk drive clears the current setting of the boot priority.

IMPORTANT:

- To add a hard disk during operation of the Global Array Manager (GAM), click the Scan Device key after about 90 seconds have passed from the installation of the hard disk. If you click the Scan Device key after executing the Expand Array, the added disk appears correctly.
- If a hard disk is added to the server operating in RAID1 by using the expand array feature, the RAID is automatically changed to RAID0+1. (However, it is not possible to set RAID0+1 directly by using a specific utility.)

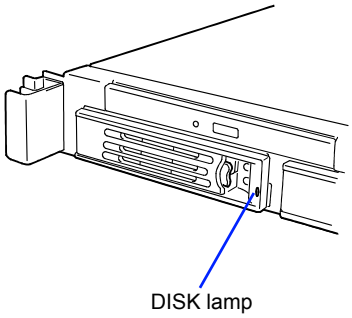
9. Install the front bezel you removed in step 2.

There are tabs on the left side of the front bezel. Engage the tabs with the server frame, install the front bezel, and lock it with the security key.

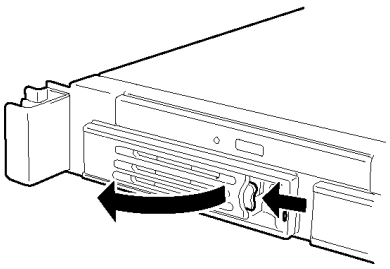
Removal

Take the following steps to remove a hard disk drive:

> **NOTE:** If removing a failing hard disk drive, confirm the slot in which the DISK lamp of the hard disk drive is amber before starting the removal.

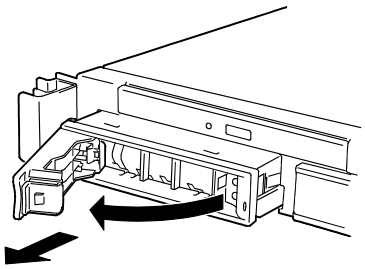


1. See the section "Preparing for Installation and Removal" described earlier to prepare.
2. Unlock the front bezel with the security key, and remove the front bezel.
3. Push the lever to unlock, and open the handle.



4. Firmly hold the handle and hard disk drive, and pull out the hard disk drive.

5. If using the server with the hard disk drive removed, install the dummy block in the empty slot.



6. Power on the server, start the SETUP utility, select [Boot] → [Hard Disk], and set the boot priority in the submenu.

This operation is necessary because installing an additional hard disk drive clears the current setting of the boot priority.

7. Install the front bezel you removed in step 2.

When the hard disks are in the disk array configuration, you can restore the state before an error using the auto-rebuild feature that stores the data in the old hard disk into a new one.

The auto-rebuild feature is available for the RAID1, RAID5, or RAID0+1 disk array configuration.

Auto-rebuild is carried out when you hot-swap a failed hard disk with a new one (replace the disk while the server is powered). While auto-rebuild is in progress, the DISK lamp flashes green and amber alternatively to indicate it.

IMPORTANT:

- When auto-rebuild fails, the DISK lamp lights in amber. Remove and install the hard disk again to restart auto-rebuild.
- If the disk array monitoring utility is installed, it may display or act as follows. If the DISK lamp does not light in amber after auto-rebuild, however, auto-rebuild has completed successfully.
  - Displays "Rebuild was cancelled" on the screen while auto-rebuild is in progress.
  - Appears to stop and restart auto-rebuild.

Observe the following notes for auto-rebuild.

- Do not power off the server in the period between a hard disk error and completion of auto-rebuild.
- When you removed a hard disk, wait at least 90 seconds before installing the hard disk back again.
- Do not replace another hard disk while rebuilding is in progress. (The DISK lamp flashes in green and amber alternatively while rebuilding the hard disk.)

Server ~ Pull-out from the Rack ~

The server needs to be pulled out from the rack for installing/removing any components other than the hard disk drives and power supply units.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions to use the server safely. Failure to follow these instructions may result in death or serious personal injury. See pages 1-3 to 1-8 for details.

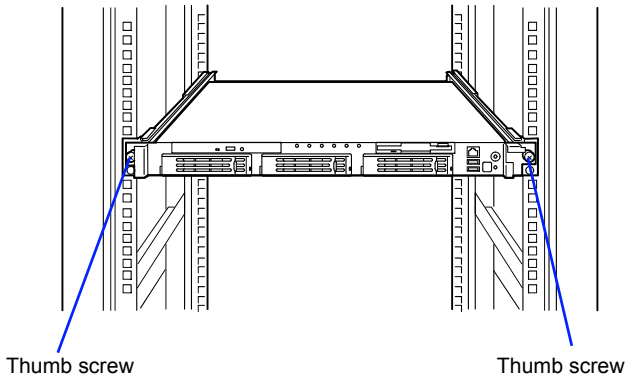
- Do not install the server on a rack with leaving covers removed.
- Do not pinch your finger with mechanical components.
- Note high temperature.
- Do not pull out a device from the rack if the rack is unstable.
- Do not leave more than one device being pulled out from the rack.

1. See the section "Preparing for Installation and Removal" described earlier to prepare.

NOTE: To confirm the device you are going to maintain, use the UID switch and the UID lamp that goes on when the switch is pressed.

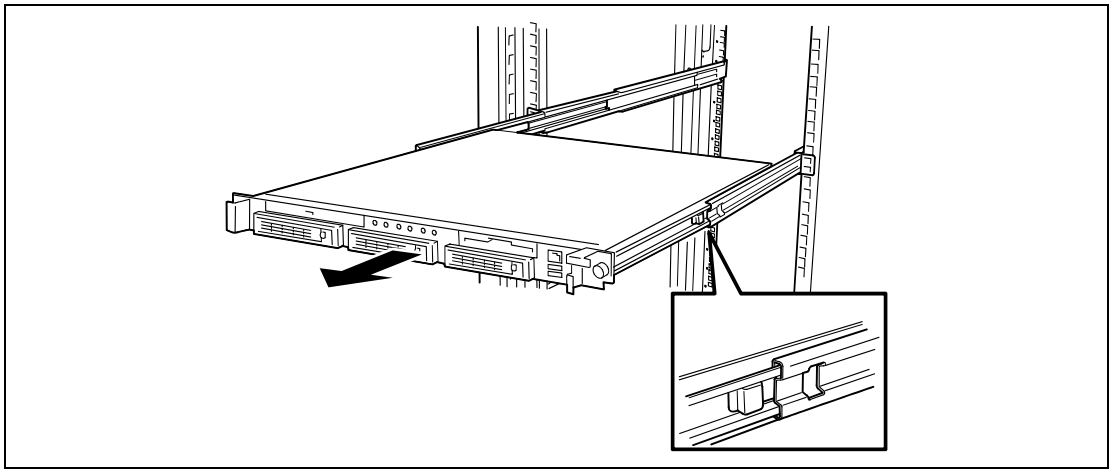
2. Loosen the thumb screws at the right and left of the front panel, hold the handles, and slowly pull out the server from the rack.

The server is locked while you are pulling it. Stop pulling when it is locked.



To place the server in the rack, push it back into the rack while pressing the right and left lock arms.

IMPORTANT: Be very careful not to get your finger caught in the arms or rails.

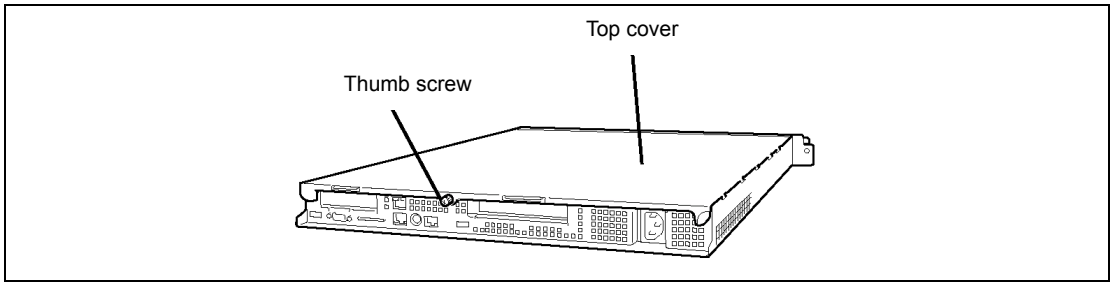


Top Cover

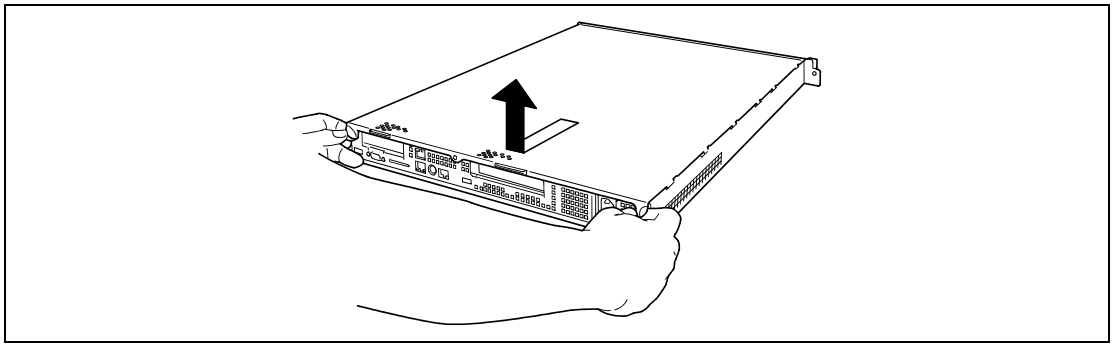
Open the top cover when installing/removing an internal device or reconnecting an internal cable.

Removal

1. See the section "Preparing for Installation and Removal" described earlier to prepare.
2. Pull out the server from the rack.
3. Loosen the thumb screw on the rear, and remove the top cover.



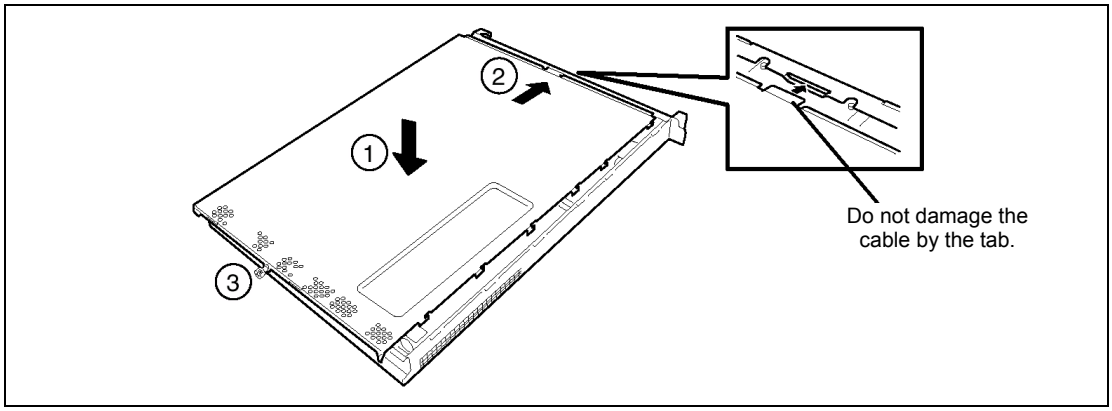
IMPORTANT: Firmly hold the whole top cover, and lift it up straight. Lifting up the rear of the cover may cause the cover frame of the front to damage cables in the server.



Installation

When installing the top cover, hold the top cover parallel to the server, and place it on the server. Confirm that all the tabs of the top cover are securely inserted into the slots in the server frame, and then secure the cover with the thumb screws.

IMPORTANT: Be very careful not to damage the internal flat cable (connected to the LED board on the front panel) by the tab on the server front side.



DIMM

Install the additional DIMM (Dual Inline Memory Module) to the DIMM socket on the mother board in the server. The mother board is provided with six DIMM board slots.

NOTE: Up to 6GB of memory (1GB DIMM x 6) can be installed. (The DIMMs installed as standard need to be replaced in this case.) A DIMM of 128MB is installed in DIMM slots #1A and #1B at shipment.

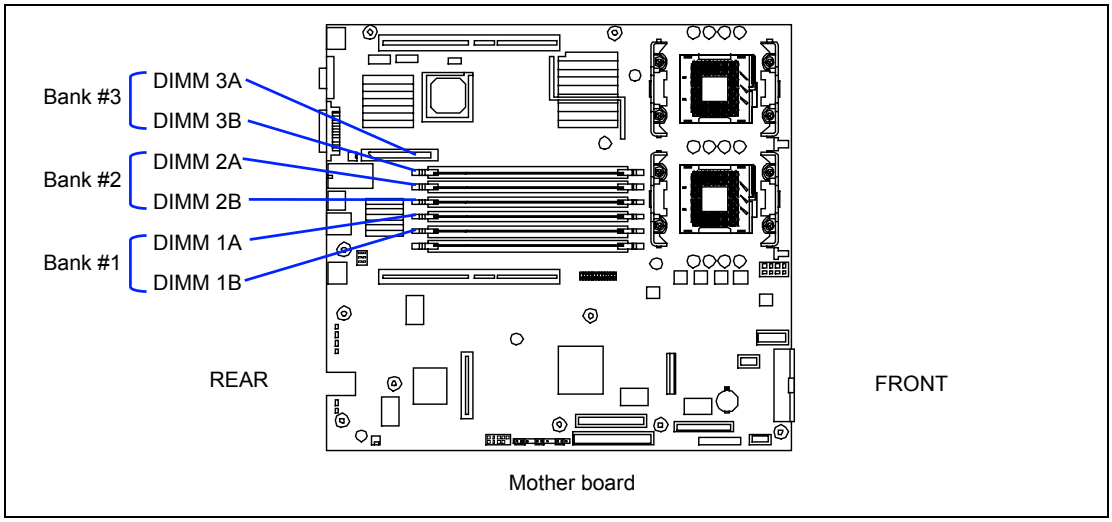
IMPORTANT:

- The DIMM is extremely sensitive to static electricity. Make sure to touch the metal frame of the server to discharge static electricity from your body before handling the DIMM. Do not touch the DIMM terminals or on-board parts by a bare hand or place the DIMM directly on the desk. For static notes, see the section "Anti-static Measures" described earlier.
- Make sure to use the DIMM authorized by NEC. Installing a third-party DIMM may cause a failure of the DIMM as well as the server. Repair of the server due to failures or damage resulted from installing such a board will be charged.

Installation Order

DIMMs must be populated in pairs and in the following order:

1A and 1B, 2A and 2B, then 3A and 3B.



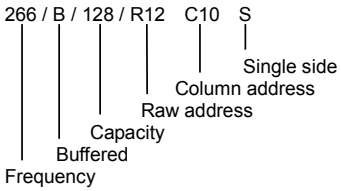
IMPORTANT:

- Install two additional DIMMs for each bank*1 because the server uses interleaved memory. If DIMMs of different specifications*2 are installed in a bank, the server does not operate normally.

  *1 A bank is a unit of two DIMM slots. Each pair of DIMM slots #1A and 1#B (bank #1), #2A and #2B (bank #2), and #3A and #3B (bank #3) in the figure is a bank. (The symbols are also printed on the mother board.)

  *2 DIMM specification is shown on the label attached to the DIMM as follows:

  Example: Frequency of 266 MHz, buffered, capacity of 128 MB, raw address of 12 bits, column address of 10 bits, and single side

- The following POST error messages are displayed when installing the DIMM in wrong installation order:
  8502: Bad or missing memory in Slot 1A
  8506: Bad or missing memory in Slot 1B

Installation

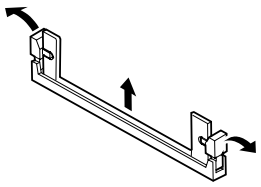
Install a DIMM in the following procedure.

IMPORTANT: The server supports DIMMs of only the low-profile type (30 mm (1.2 inches) in height). It does not support DIMMs exceeding the specified height.

1. See the section "Preparing for Installation and Removal" described earlier to prepare.
2. Pull out the server from the rack.
3. Open the top cover.
4. Remove the DIMM cover from the socket into which you are going to install a DIMM.

   Open the levers at both ends of the socket. The cover is released from the socket.

IMPORTANT: Keep the removed DIMM cover for future use.

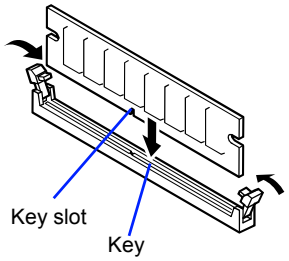


5. Push the DIMM straight into the socket.

NOTE: Make sure of the orientation of the DIMM.
Position the DIMM so that a notch in the bottom edge of the DIMM aligns with the keyed socket. Applying too much pressure can damage the socket. Keyed DIMMs insert only one way.

IMPORTANT: To avoid damage to the socket, do not apply excessive force while pressing the DIMM.

The levers automatically close when the DIMM is inserted into the socket.



6. Install the components you removed in steps 1 to 3.
7. Power on the server and verify that POST displays no error messages.

   If POST displays an error message, take a note on the message and see the POST error messages listed in Chapter 8.
8. Start the SETUP and select [Advanced] → [Memory Configuration] to verify that the installed DIMM shows the status "Installed". (See Chapter 4 or details.)
9. Select "Yes" for [Reset Config Data] on the [Advanced] menu.

   This setting is required to change the hardware configuration data. See Chapter 4 for details.
10. If Windows 2000 is in use, set the paging file size to the recommended value (total memory size × 1.5) or a greater value. See Chapter 5 for details.

Removal

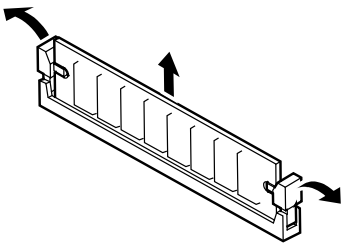
Remove the DIMM depending on the following procedure.

NOTES:

- To remove the failed DIMM, check the error message appearing in POST or NEC ESMPRO to identify the DIMM socket (group) in which the failed DIMM is installed.
- The server operates only when at least two DIMMs are installed.

1. See the section "Preparing for Installation and Removal" described earlier to prepare.
2. Pull out the server from the rack.
3. Open the top cover.
4. Open the levers at both sides of the socket from which you remove the DIMM.

   The DIMM is unlock and ready for removal.



5. Reinstall all parts removed in Step 2.

   Power on the server and verify that POST displays no error messages.

   If POST displays an error message, take a note on the message and see the POST error messages listed in Chapter 8.
6. Start the SETUP and select [Advanced] → [Memory Configuration] → [Memory Retest] → [Enabled] to clear the error information of the removed DIMM. (See Chapter 4 for details.)
7. Select "Yes" for [Reset Config Data] on the Advanced menu.

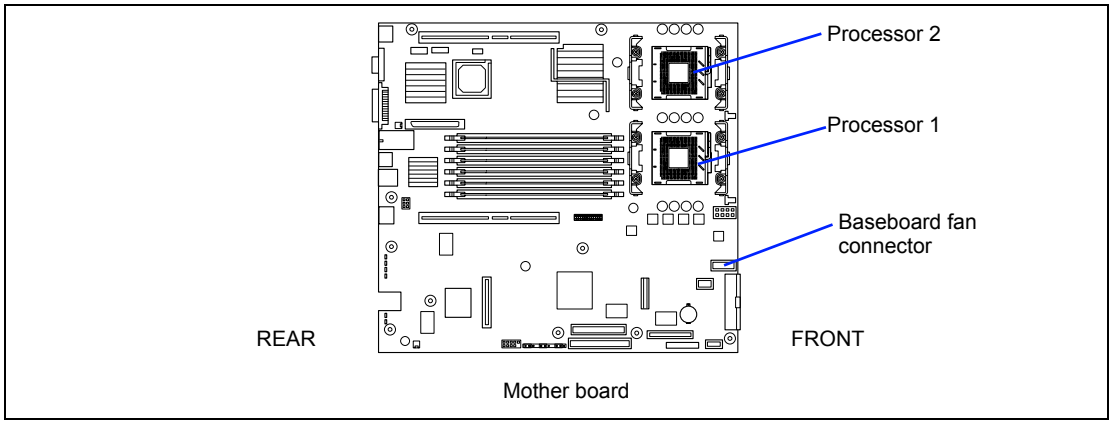
   This setting is required to change the hardware configuration data. See Chapter 4 for details.

Processor (CPU)

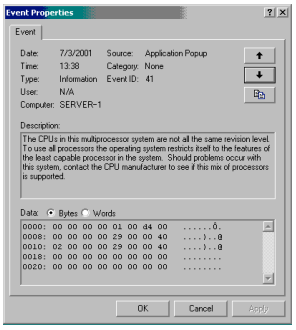
The server may have another CPU installed in addition to the standard CPU (Intel Xeon Processor).

IMPORTANT:

- The CPU is extremely sensitive to static electricity. Make sure to touch the metal frame of the server to discharge static electricity from your body before handling the CPU. Do not touch the CPU pins by a bare hand or place the CPU directly on the desk. For static notes, see the section "Anti-static Measures" described earlier.
- Do not operate the system until confirming that the additionally installed CPU is in normal state.
- Make sure to use the CPU authorized by NEC. Installing a third-party CPU may cause a failure of the CPU as well as the server. Repair of the server due to failures or damage resulted from installing such a board will be charged.



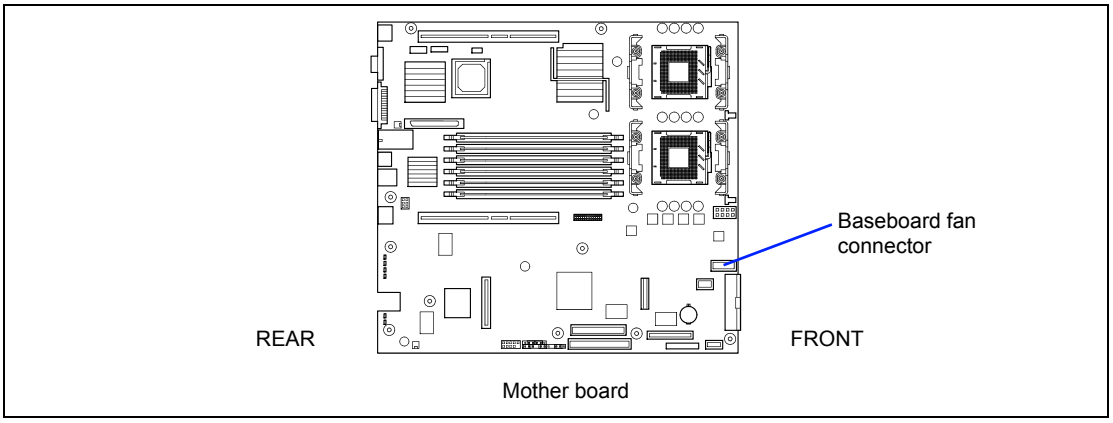
NOTE: If the different revision of the processor is installed in the multiprocessor system, Windows logs the following information every startup. If this message is logged, it is no problem for operation.


Event Properties
Event
Date: 7/3/2001 Source: Application Popup
Time: 13:38 Category: None
Type: Information Event ID: 41
User: N/A
Computer: SERVER-1
Description:
The CPUs in this multiprocessor system are not all the same revision level. To use all processors the operating system restricts itself to the features of the least capable processor in the system. Should problems occur with this system, contact the CPU manufacturer to see if this mix of processors is supported.
Data: Bytes Words
OK
Cancel

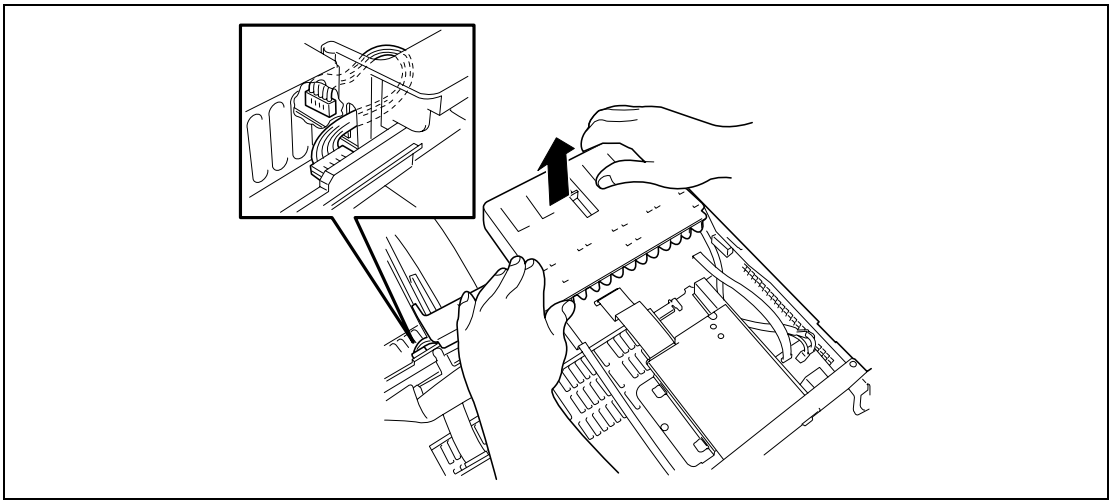
Installation

Take the following steps to install the CPU.

1. See the section "Preparing for Installation and Removal" described earlier to prepare.
2. Pull out the server from the rack.
3. Open the top cover.
4. Disconnect the baseboard fan cable connector from the mother board.



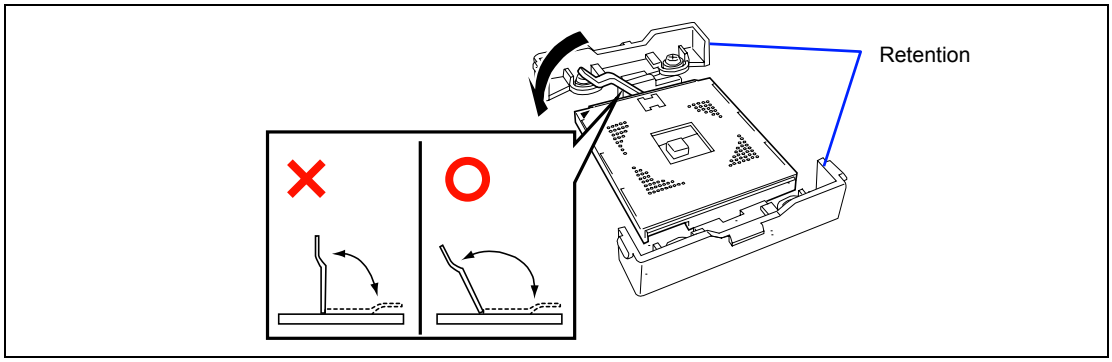
5. Remove the FAN assembly, lifting up the rear of the bracket.



NOTE: Remove the FAN assembly while making sure that the signal cable from the power supply that runs through the slit on the left side of the bracket is not caught.

6. Locate the CPU socket which you are going to install CPU.
7. Raise the locking lever on the socket.

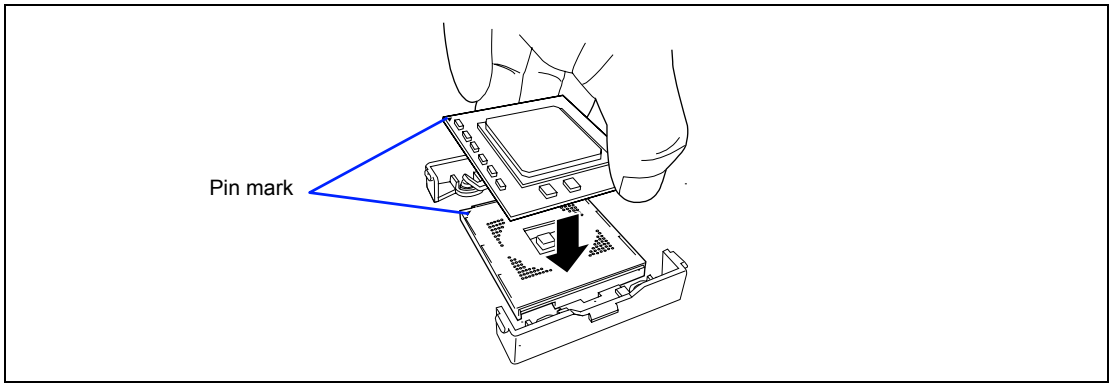
IMPORTANT: Open the lever until it stops. The bar can be opened to approx. 120 degrees.



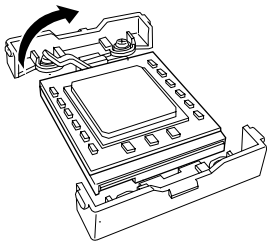
8. Aligning the pins of the CPU with the socket, insert the CPU slowly and gently into the socket.

IMPORTANT:

- Be aware of CPU direction. Pin layouts on two corners among four differ from others to prevent an incorrect insertion. Confirm the pin mark and pin layout on the socket, and insert the CPU correctly.
- The mother board has "zero insertion force" sockets. If CPU does not drop easily into socket holes, make sure lever is in the full-open position.

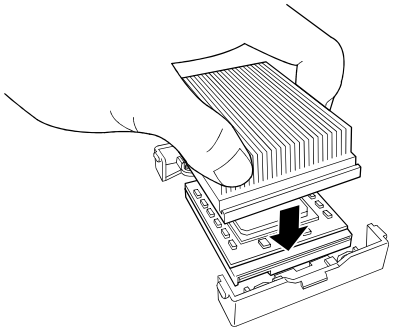


9. Push the CPU lightly to the socket, and push down the lever to secure the CPU.



10. Put the heat sink on CPU.

NOTE: Be aware of direction of heat sink (see figure below).



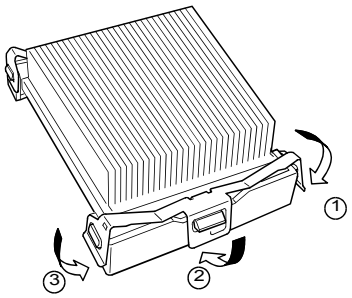
11. Install the both heat sink clips as follows:

(1) Hook one end of the clip over the tab on the retention.

(2) Align the clip with the slot in the heat sink and press down on the center of the clip until it snaps over the center tab.

(3) Snap the remaining end of the clip down over its tab.

The bracket-attached side must be engaged with the rear of the socket.

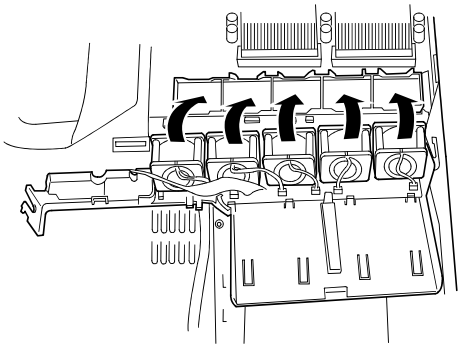


12. Make sure that the heat sink is level.

NOTES:

- If the heat sink is not level, remove it, and then install it again. The following probably causes the heat sink not to be level:
  - The CPU is not positioned correctly.
  - The wire clip is not engaged correctly.
- Do not move the secured heat sink.

13. Reinstall the FAN assembly and connect the baseboard fan connector into the mother board.



NOTE: Put the SCSI cable through the tunnel under the full-length riser card receiver of the bracket. Attach the bracket while making sure that the cable is not caught in the bracket. Also make sure that the signal cable from the power supply unit that runs through the slit on the left side of the bracket is not caught when attaching the bracket.

14. Install the components you removed previously.

15. Power on the server, start the SETUP utility, and set "Processor Retest" of "Processor Settings" on the Main menu to "Enable".

16. Verify that POST displays no error messages.

If POST displays an error message, take a note on the message and see the POST error messages listed in Chapter 8.

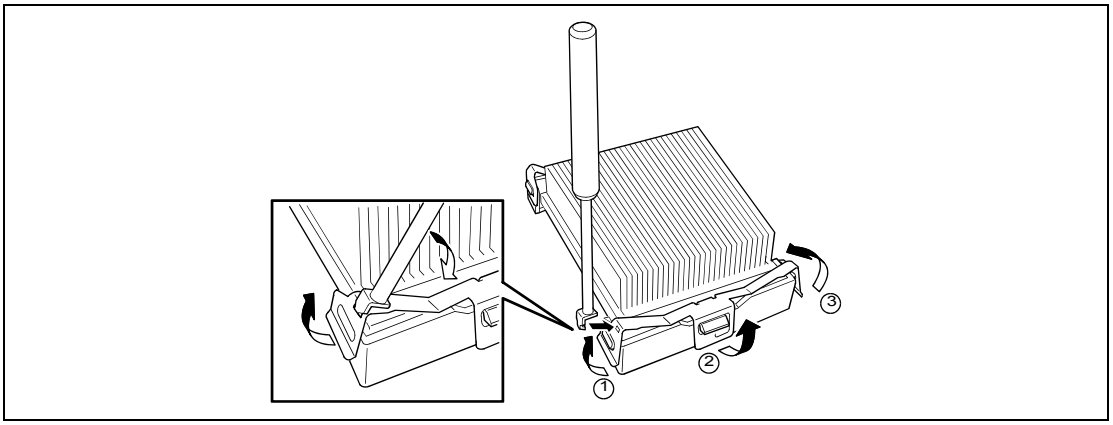
17. Set "Reset Config Data" on the Advanced menu to "Enable".

This setting is required to change the hardware configuration data. See Chapter 4 for details.

18. To add one or more CPUs to the server in 1-CPU configuration to operate the server with more than one CPU, change the driver of [Computer] in the device manager to [ACPI multi-processor PC] and then update the system (see Chapter 5).

Removal

To remove the CPU, prepare the removal referring to steps 1 and 5 in the installation procedure and do the reverse procedure of steps 13 to 6. Remove the heat sink by using a flat-tip screwdriver for the fixing metal fitting.



IMPORTANT:

- Do not remove any CPU unless it is failed.
- Install the dust cover onto the vacant socket.
- After the operation, heat may make the cool seat at the bottom of the heat sink adhere to the CPU. To remove the heat sink from the CPU, first turn the heat sink to the left and right lightly to make sure that the heat sink can be apart from the CPU. Removing the heat sink with it adhering to the CPU may cause the CPU and/or socket to be defected.

Do the following procedure if a CPU is removed (or replaced).

1. Start SETUP to select menus "Main" – "Processor Settings" – "Processor Retest" in the order to clear the error information on the removed CPU (see Chapter 4).

   When a CPU is replaced, select menus "Main" – "Processor Settings" to confirm that the ID and L2 Cache of the additional CPU are defined normally (see Chapter 4).

2. Set "Reset Config Data" on the Advanced menu to "Enable."

   This is required to update the hardware configuration information. See Chapter 4 for details.

PCI Board

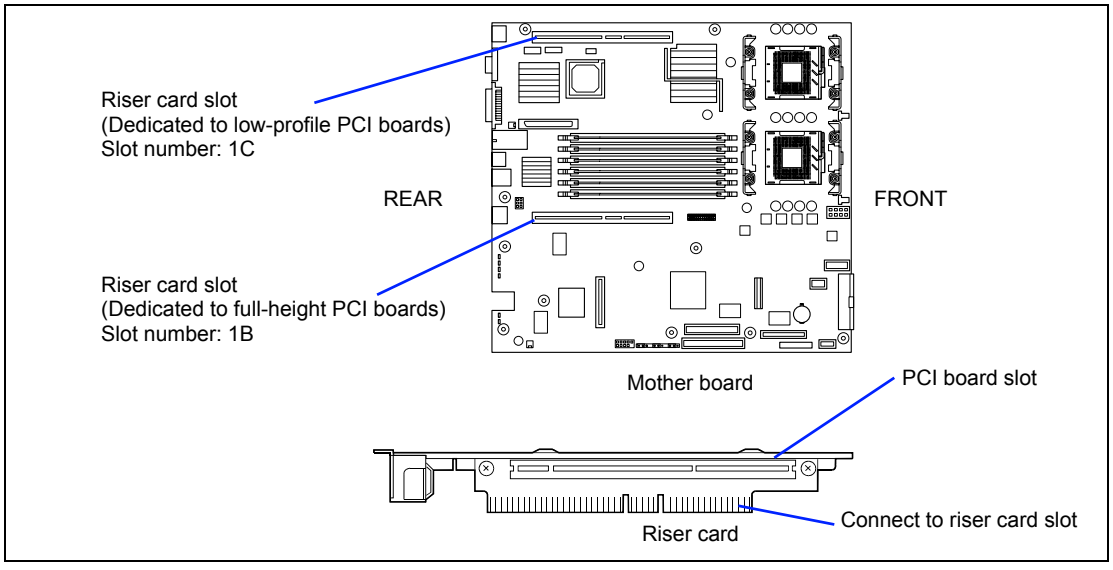
The server has two "riser cards" on the mother board that enable installation of PCI boards. One PCI board can be installed on each riser card.

Insert PCI boards for network extension and file device function extension into PCI board slots in each riser card.

IMPORTANT:

- The PCI board is extremely sensitive to static electricity. Make sure to touch the metal frame of the server to discharge static electricity from your body before handling the PCI board. Do not touch the PCI board terminals or on-board parts by a bare hand or place the PCI board directly on the desk. For static notes, see the section "Anti-static Measures".
- Some restrictions are imposed on the combination of PCI boards which can be installed in the server. Contact your sales agent for details.
- A riser card is designed for installing only low-profile PCI boards or full-height PCI boards. Before installing a PCI board, make sure of the card specification.

NOTE: Some PCI boards use an on-board expanded ROM. See the manual provided with the PCI board to determine whether expanded ROM needs to be loaded. Use the BIOS setup utility "SETUP" for the setting. For details, see Chapter 4.



Notes

Observe the following notes on installing/removing a PCI board:

- Do not touch the terminals of the riser cards and the leads of electronic components with your bare hand. Fingerprints and dust left on them cause the server to malfunction due to a connection failure or damage to the leads.
- A riser card is designed for installing only low-profile PCI boards or full-height PCI boards. Before installing a PCI board, make sure of the card specification.
- PCI slot number "1C" is assigned to the riser card for low-profile PCI boards, and "1B" is assigned to the riser card for full-height PCI boards.
- The system detects the boot devices in order of the PCI bus slots 1B (full-height PCI board) and then 1C (low-profile PCI board).
- The PCI devices of the same type (including onboard PCI device) may be recognized in different order from that described above, depending on OS or disk array BIOS utility. Check the slot location of PCI device by PCI bus number, device number and function number shown in the table below.

	Bus number	Device number	Function number
Onboard NIC1	3	7	0
Onboard NIC2	3	7	1
Slot 1B	3	8	X
Onboard SCSI Ch A (external)	4 *	7	0
Onboard SCSI Ch B (internal)	4 *	7	1
Slot 1C	4 *	8	X

* The bus number may be 5 or greater depending on the board installed in Slot 1B.

- Set "Disabled" for the optional ROM of a LAN device not to be booted by using the BIOS SETUP utility.
- If an additional LAN device is installed, it is hard to push the catch of the connector with your finger that is connected to the LAN port. Disconnect the connector pushing the catch with a standard screwdriver. At this time, be very careful for the screwdriver not to damage the LAN port or other ports.
- If a bootable PCI board (e.g., a disk array controller, SCSI controller, or LAN card) is additionally installed, the boot priority is changed. After the additional installation, start the BIOS SETUP utility, select [Boot] → [Boot Device Priority], and set the new boot priority.
- Contact your service representative for the acceptable optional PCI board.

Installation

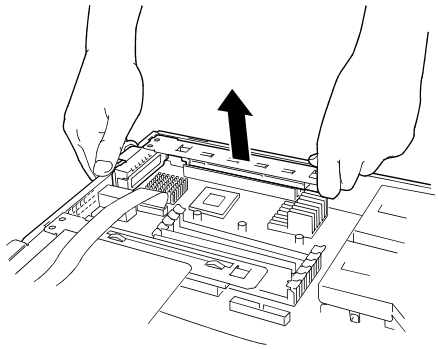
Take the following steps to install a PCI board on the riser card:

IMPORTANT: The full-height riser card is equipped with an "insulator (black)" to protect PCI boards. Do not remove the insulator, and handle it carefully. The insulator is not shown in the figures in this manual for simplifying the illustrations.

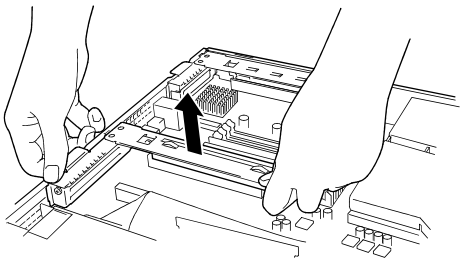
NOTES:

- Each riser card supports low-profile or full-height PCI boards. Before installing a PCI board, confirm that the type of the PCI board.
- When installing a PCI board, confirm that the card connector matches the connector of the riser card.

1. See the section "Preparing for Installation and Removal" described earlier to prepare.
2. Pull out the server from the rack.
3. Remove the top cover.
4. Lift straight up and remove the riser card from the server.



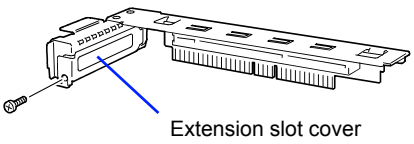
Riser card slot
(Dedicated to low-profile PCI boards)
Slot number: 1C



Riser card slot
(Dedicated to full-height PCI boards)
Slot number: 1B

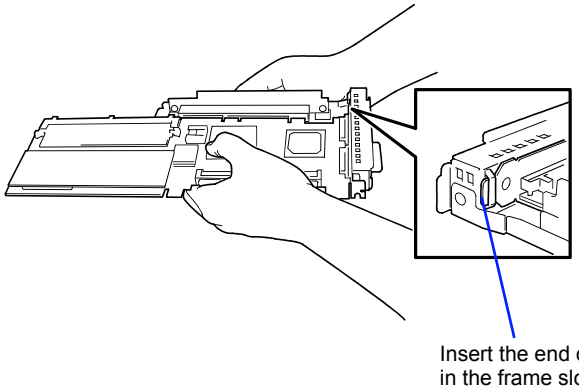
5. Remove the screw from the riser card, and remove the extension slot cover.

NOTE: Keep the removed extension slot cover for future use.



6. Install the PCI board on the riser card.

Align the PCI board terminal section with the riser card slot, and firmly push the PCI board until it is fully seated.



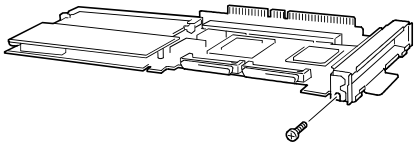
IMPORTANT:

- Do not touch the terminals of the riser cards and PCI boards with your bare hand. Fingerprints and dust left on them cause the server to malfunction.
- If you are unable to install a PCI board correctly, remove it, and then install it again. Be careful not to apply excess force to a PCI board or riser card. Doing so may damage the card.

NOTE: Confirm that the end of the PCI board bracket is inserted in the frame slot of the riser card.

7. Secure the PCI board with the screw you removed in step 6.

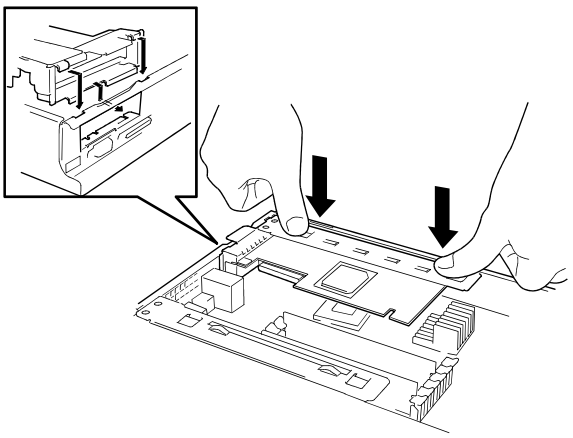
> **IMPORTANT:** This step is to protect the terminals of the riser card from dust or fingerprints. Dust and fingerprints left on them cause the server to malfunction.



8. Insert the riser card into the slot on the mother board.

Align the riser card terminal section with the slot on the mother board, and firmly push the riser card until it is fully seated.

> **NOTE:** There are catches on the riser card frame that are used to secure the riser card to the cabinet. When inserting the riser card, confirm that the catches are correctly fit into the holes on the rear of the cabinet. After the insertion, push the riser card with your fingers until you cannot see any part of the riser card terminal section. The riser card is now fully seated in the slot.



9. Install the components you removed previously.
10. Verify that POST displays no error messages.

    If POST displays an error message, take a note on the message and see the POST error messages listed in Chapter 8.
11. Select "Yes" for [Advanced] → [Reset Config Data].

    This setting is required to change the hardware configuration data. See Chapter 4 for details.
12. Start the BIOS configuration utility in the installed card, and set up the card.

    Presence/absence of the utility and the start and operation methods depend on the card. For details, see the manual provided with the card. If a PCI board (e.g., a disk array controller, SCSI controller, or LAN card) with a bootable device connected is additionally installed, the boot priority is changed to the default. After the additional installation, start the BIOS SETUP utility, select [Boot] → [Boot Device Priority], and set the new boot priority. (See Chapter 4.)

Removal

Remove a PCI board in reverse order of the installation steps. After the removal, start the BIOS SETUP utility, select [Boot] → [Boot Device Priority], and set the new boot priority. (See Chapter 4.)

Disk Array Controller Board

The disk array controller board is an optional PCI board provided to improve data reliability.

Installing the disk array controller board allows you to use hard disks in the device bays of the server and those in the optional expansion disk cabinet in the disk array configuration.

IMPORTANT:

- The disk array controller board is extremely sensitive to static electricity. Make sure to touch the metal frame of the Server to discharge static electricity from your body before handling the disk array controller board. Do not touch the disk array controller board terminals or on-board parts by a bare hand or place the disk array controller board directly on the desk. For static notes, see the section "Anti-static Measures" described earlier.
- Making hard disks in the disk array configuration or changing the RAID level initializes hard disks. If the hard disk to be configured in the array has your valuable data stored, make sure to make a backup copy of the data in another hard disk before installing the disk array controller board and configuring the array.
- The disk array configuration requires at least two hard disks.
- Use hard disks of the same capacity and performance (e.g., revolution) for each pack to configure them in the array.
- When connecting a disk array controller, start the BIOS SETUP utility, select [Boot] → [Hard Disk Drives], and set the 8th priority or earlier for the controller. If the 9th priority or later is set, the system is unable to start the disk array controller configuration menu.
- When the two SCSI RAID controllers are installed in the system, the system drive must be connected to the SCSI RAID controller installed in the PCI Slot 1B.

NOTES:

- Before installing a disk array controller board, start the SETUP utility, select [Advanced] → [PCI Configuration], and confirm that [Enabled] is set for the parameter [PCI Slot xx ROM] (xx: PCI slot number).
- A disk array configuration of RAID1, RAID5, or RAID0+1 increases disk reliability. However, the actually available capacity becomes smaller than the total hard disk capacity in the disk array configuration.

Installation

See "PCI Board" for the installation of a disk array controller.

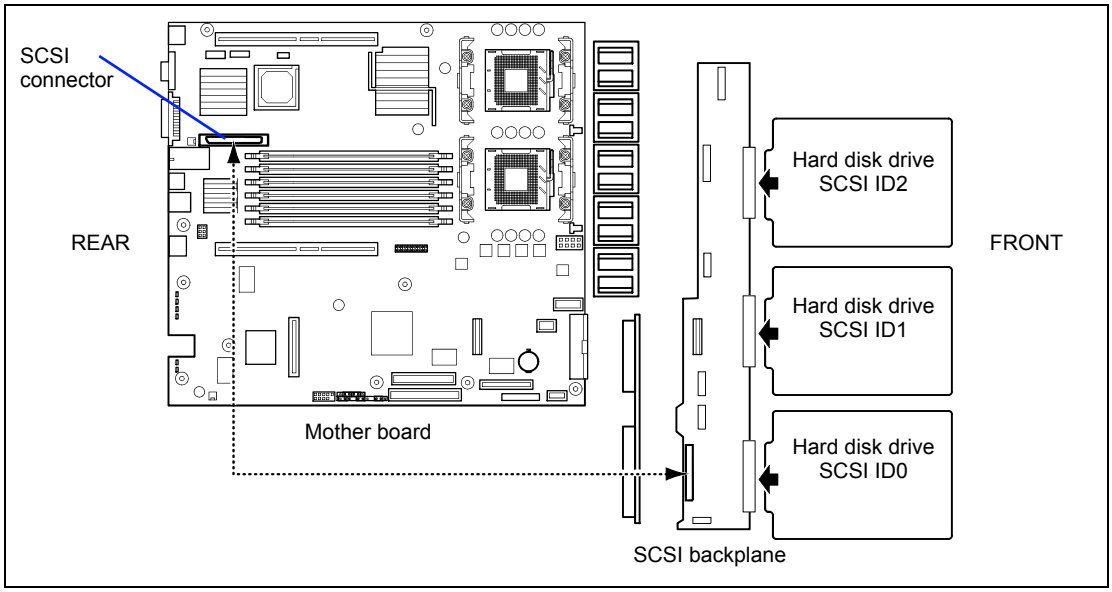
Removal

Remove a disk array controller board in reverse order of the installation steps.

Use of internal hard disk drives in a disk array configuration

To use the internal hard disk drives in a disk array configuration in the server containing a disk array controller board, reconnect the SCSI cables and connect the LED cables on the mother board to the disk array controller.

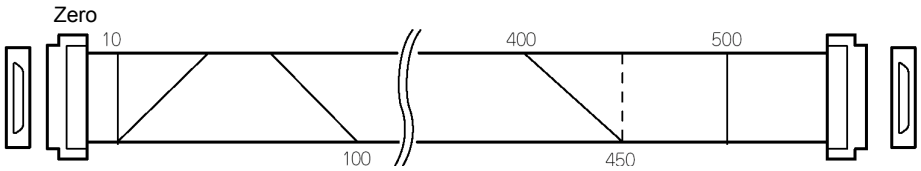
The internal hard disk drive interface is connected to the SCSI connector on the mother board at shipment.



■ Forming of the SCSI cable

To connect a disk array controller, use the SCSI cable connected to the mother board. In this case, the SCSI cable needs to be formed. The following shows how to form the SCSI cable when it is connected to the disk array controller. (The solid lines indicate lines for valley fold, and the broken lines indicate lines for mountain fold.)

– Cable forming for connecting internal hard disk drives to the N8103-80 disk array controller installed on the low-profile riser card

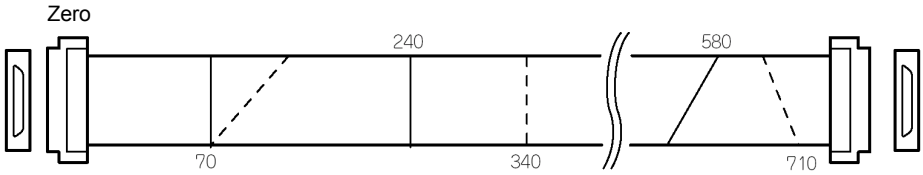


To the connector of the SCSI backplane for internal SCSI hard disk drives (MB side) *3

*1 The numbers indicate the lengths (mm) from zero point.hard disk drives
*2 Connect the cable connector disconnected from the SCSI backplane to the disk array controller.
*3 Connect the cable connector disconnected from the mother board to the SCSI backplane.

To the connector of the N8103-80 disk array controller board installed on the low-profile riser card (BP side) *2

– Cable forming for connecting internal hard disk drives to the N8103-80/81 disk array controller installed on the full-height riser card



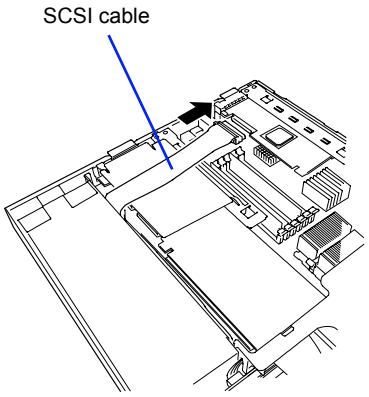
To the connector of the N8103-80/81 disk array controller board installed on the full-height riser card (MB Side) *2

*1 Reconnect the cable connector disconnected from the SCSI backplane.
*2 Connect the cable connector disconnected from the mother board.

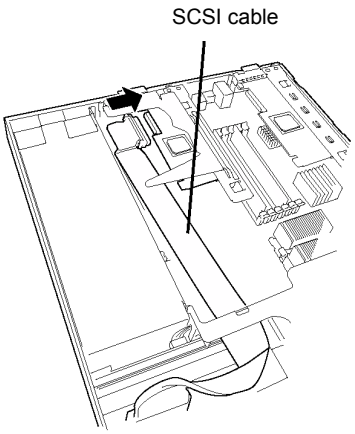
To the connector of the SCSI backplane for internal SCSI hard disk drives (BP Side) *1

■ SCSI cable connection

To use the internal hard disk drives in a disk array configuration, disconnect the SCSI cable from the SCSI connector on the mother board and SCSI backplane.

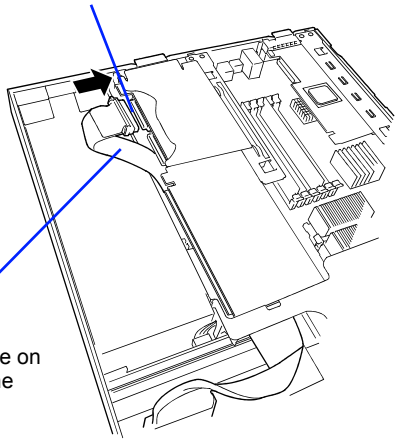


Low-profile type



With the N8103-80 disk array controller installed on the full-height riser card

If using the N8103-81 disk array controller, connect it to the connector on the rear of the server.



SCSI cable (Do not run the cable on the power supply unit. Form the cable so that it runs under the board.)

Full-height type

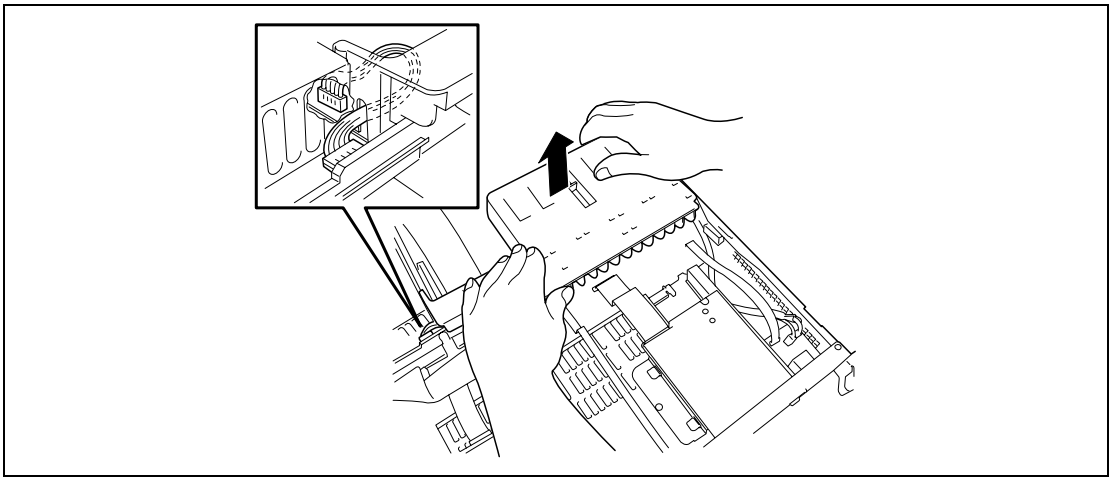
IMPORTANT: Some disk array controller boards have more than one channel (connector). They may have connectors for internal connection and external connection. However, the connectors may be under exclusive specification in consideration of the internal connection of the disk array controller board. Make sure that each connector (channel) is for internal connection or external connection. For the connectors and channels, see the manual provided with the disk array controller board.

- Example of connecting the SCSI cable

  This section explains the procedure for connecting the internal hard disk drives to the N8103-80 disk array controller board installed on the riser card dedicated to low-profile PCI boards.

1. Disconnect the baseboard fan cable connector from the mother board and remove the FAN assembly, lifting up the rear of the bracket.

NOTE: Remove the bracket while making sure that the signal cable from the power supply unit that runs through the slit on the left side of the bracket is not caught.



2. If an option is installed on the riser card for full-height PCI boards, remove the riser card.
3. Disconnect the SCSI cable from the mother board and SCSI backplane.
4. Form the SCSI cable according to "Forming of the SCSI cable."
5. Connect the connector (MB Side is printed on the pull tag) of the SCSI cable to the SCSI backplane connector.

6. Attach the FAN assembly in reverse order of step 1.

> **NOTE:** Put the SCSI cable through the tunnel under the full-length riser card receiver of the bracket. Attach the bracket while making sure that the cable is not caught in the bracket. Also make sure that the signal cable from the power supply unit that runs through the slit on the left side of the bracket is not caught when attaching the bracket.

7. Route the cable so that it runs avoiding the insulator mounted on the full-height riser card.

   If having removed the riser card for full-height PCI boards in step 2, lift up the connector on the disk array controller side of the provided SCSI cable for a disk array configuration, and connect the riser card to the connector. At this time, be careful not to damage the SCSI cable that runs under the riser card.

8. Connect the connector (BP Side is printed on the pull tag) of the SCSI cable to the disk array controller.

9. Start the BIOS SETUP utility, select [Boot], and set the new boot priority.

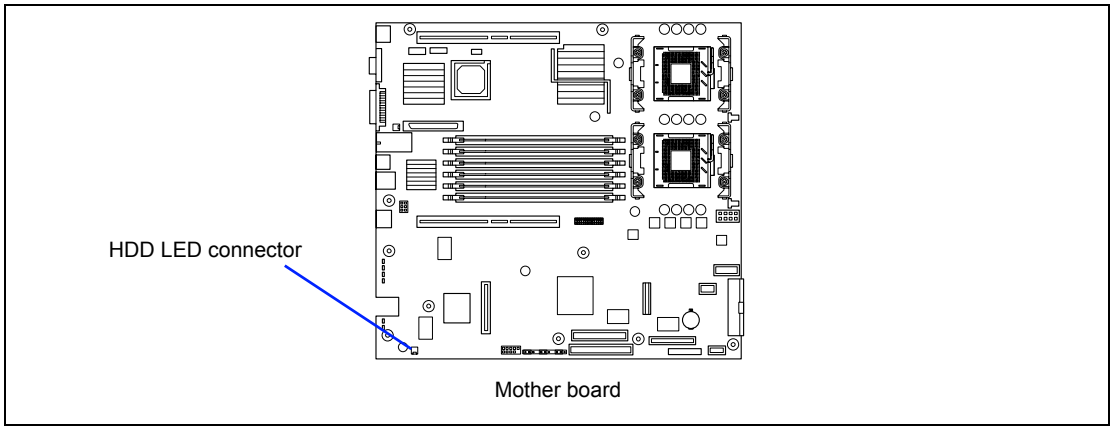
- LED relay cable connection

  To indicate the status of access to the internal hard disk drives in a disk array configuration, connect the LED relay cable (connected on the mother board) to the HDD LED connector of the disk array controller.

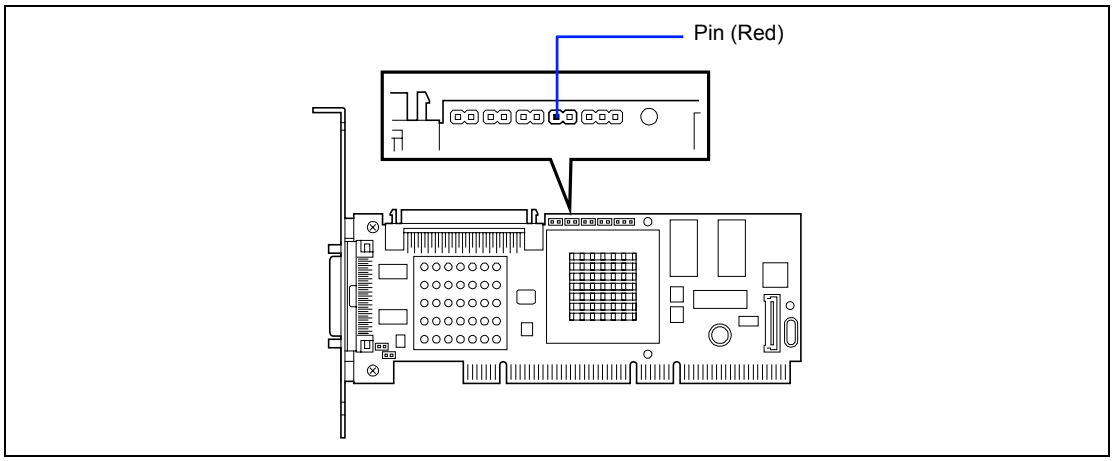
1. Connect the LED relay cable connector (black) to the LED Active pin on the disk array controller.

   Connect the pin having the red cable to the LED Active pin. Do not connect any pin having the black cable.

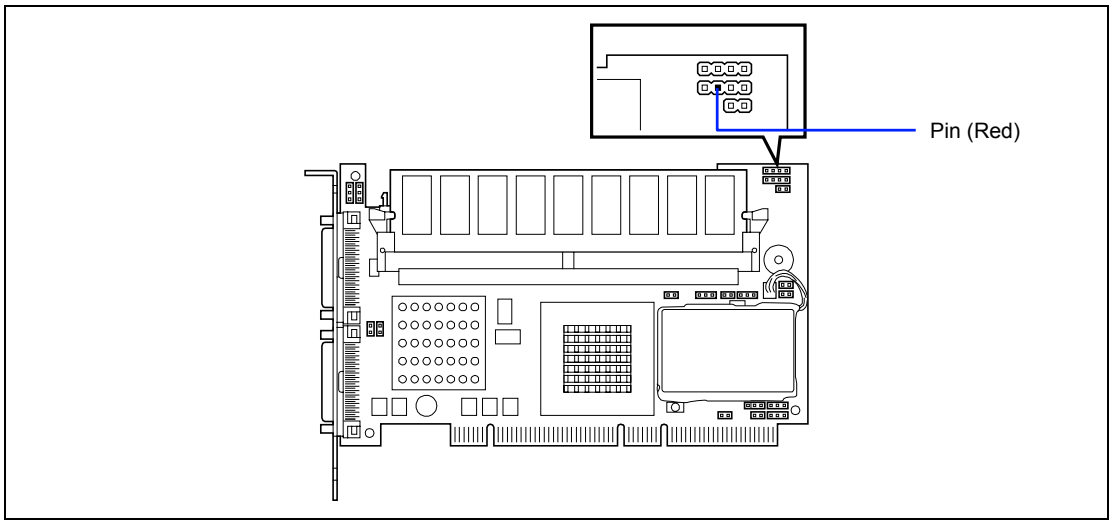
2. Confirm that the LED relay cable connector (brown) is connected to the HDD LED connector on the mother board.



N8103-80F



N8103-81F



- Disk array configuration of internal hard disk drives

  Observe the following notes on configuring a disk array:

  – The server must contain more than one SCSI hard disk drive having the same capacity and the same rotational speed. (The minimum number of required disks depends on the configuration of RAID (Redundant Arrays of Inexpensive [Independent] Disks).)

  – Select/set a RAID level "RAID0", "RAID1", "RAID5", or "RAID0+1" of disk array configuration.

  When installing a system in an internal hard disk, you should use "Express Setup" to perform all the procedures for RAID configuration, OS installation, and then OS setup.

  Use Express Setup even when not installing a system. Start Express Setup, select [OS Selection] → [Others]. The installer automatically performs all the procedures for RAID configuration, maintenance partition setting, and then maintenance utility installation.

  When making the setup in manual mode, use the RAID configuration utility in the chip on the board. You can start the utility during execution of POST that automatically starts immediately after you turn on the server power switch. For details, see the online document in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM provided with the server. (The utility varies depending on the disk array controller board.) For details on the data transfer rate, RAID, and array configuration, see the manual provided with the disk array controller board as well as the online document.

Use of a disk expansion unit in a disk array configuration

A disk expansion unit is an exclusive device that can install up to 14 hard disk drives. (The number of hard disk drives depends on the model.) The server containing a disk array controller board can connect one or two of these devices. For details on the number of devices connected, see the manuals provided with the disk array controller and disk expansion unit.

> **IMPORTANT:** A disk expansion unit is provided with no hard disk drives. You need to purchase hard disk drives separately.

An optional cable may be required to connect with a disk expansion unit. Refer to the manual coming with the disk expansion unit for details.

After connecting the disk expansion unit, use the RAID configuration utility in the chip on the board to set the disk expansion unit in a disk array configuration (RAID0, RAID1, RAID5, or RAID0+1). (The utility varies depending on the board.) For details on settings and the setting methods, see the online document in the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM provided with the server or the manual provided with the board.

While a disk expansion unit is set in a disk array configuration, you can use the "Auto Rebuild" feature of the disk array controller to restore data if one of the hard disk drives installed in the disk expansion unit fails. (Replace the failing hard disk drive while the power is on. (Hot swapping))

Appendix A

Specifications

Item		NEC Express5800/120Rd-1	
		N8100-891F	**N8100-919F**
CPU	Type	Intel® Xeon™ processor	
	Clock/Cache	2.40 BGHz/512KB	3.06 GHz/512KB
	Number of processors	1	
	Maximum	2	
Chipset		E7501 (533MHz)	
Memory	Standard	512MB (256MB×2)	
	Maximum	12GB (The standard DIMM must be replaced.)	
	Expansion unit	2 DIMMs (256MB/512MB/1GB/2GB/4GB)	
	Expansion times	2 times	
	Memory module	SDRAM DIMM (Low Profile DDR-266 Buffered Type)	
	Error check	ECC	
Graphics (VRAM)		ATI RAGE XL (VRAM 8MB)	
Auxiliary input device	Floppy disk (standard)	3.5-inch drive × 1	
	Hard disk (standard)	None	
	Hard disk (maximum)	439.5 GB (146.5 GB × 3)	
	CD-ROM (standard)	ATAPI interface × 1 (Load on tray type, x24 speed)	
Hard disk bay		3 slots	
Additional slot	PCI-X (64-bit/100MHz)	1 slot	
	PCI -X(64-bit/100MHz)	1 slot (low-profile)	
LAN interface		1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T (2 ports)	
External interface	Keyboard/mouse	MINI DIN 6-pin connector (1 port)	
	USB	4-pin (4 ports, 2 for front panel, 2 for rear panel)	
	Serial	RJ-45 (2 ports, 1 for front panel, 1 for rear panel)	
	Network	RJ-45 (2 ports)	
	Display	MINI D-sub 15-pin (1 port)	
	SCSI	Ultra 320 SCSI (1 port)	
Cabinet design		Rack-mount type (1U)	
External dimensions		483 (width) × 44 (height) × 614* (depth) mm	
Weight		14 kg (Max.)	
Power supply		100 to 120 VAC ±10%, 200 to 240 VAC ±10%, 50/60 Hz ±1 Hz	
Power consumption (maximum)		300 VA, 290 W	
Environmental requirements	Temperature	10 to 35°C	
	Humidity	20 to 80% RH (no condensation)	
Others		NEC EXPRESSBUILDER supported, NEC ESMPRO provided in the standard configuration	

* 660 mm when the front bezel is installed.

(This page is intentionally left blank.)

Appendix B

Other Precautions

Transfer Rate of the On-board LAN Controller

The mother board includes the two network interface controllers that supports 10Base-T, 100Base-TX, and 1000Base-T networks and a capable of full or half duplex.

The both controllers can automatically detect and switch for network speed and transfer mode connected to the HUB. However, for proper network operation, specify the "Link Speed & Duplex" value the same as the value specified for HUB.

Server Management Software

The NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM that comes with the server contains the NEC ESMPRO utility.

NEC recommends that you should install the NEC ESMPRO for effective use of the reliability enhancement features of the server.

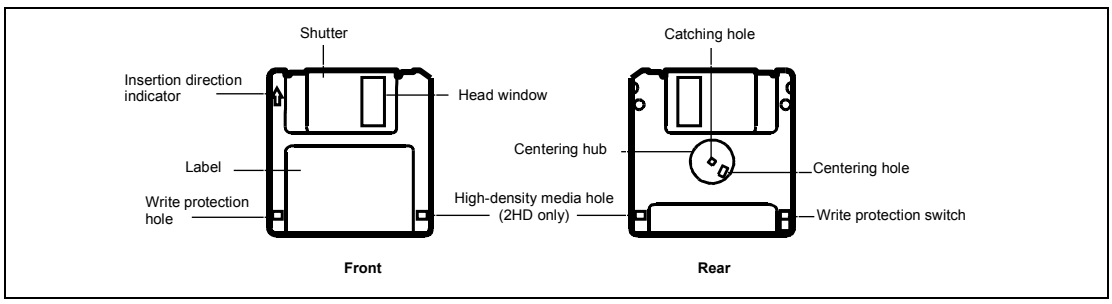
Floppy Disk

The following describes use of the floppy disk.

Floppy disk type

The server uses 3.5-inch floppy disks. You can use the following two types of 3.5-inch floppy disks:

- 2HD floppy disk (double-sided high-density track type)
  Stores data of 1.44MB.
- 2DD floppy disk (double-sided double-density track type)
  Stores data of 720KB.



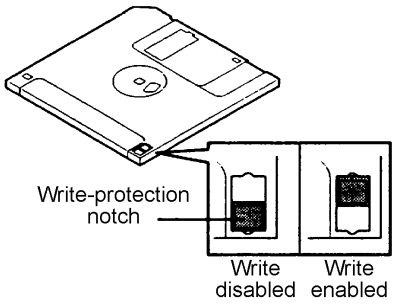
Notes on use

The floppy disk is an important data storage media with delicate structure and requires care. Keep the following notes in mind to use it:

- Insert the floppy disk into the floppy disk drive gently as far as it goes.
- Attach the label to the correct position.
- Do not write anything directly onto the disk surface with a pencil or ball-point pen.
- Do not open the shutter.
- Do not use the floppy disk in a dusty place.
- Do not place anything on the floppy disk.
- Do not leave the floppy disk in a high-temperature place (e.g., place exposed to direct sunlight or close to a heater).
- Do not leave the floppy disk with foods and drinks, or in a place exposed to cigarette smoke.
- Do not leave the floppy disk near any form of liquid or a chemical or in a place where a chemical may be accidentally sprayed over them.
- Do not place any magnetic objects (e.g., magnet) near the floppy disk.
- Do not clip the floppy disk or drop it.
- Keep the floppy disk in a floppy disk case that protects it from magnetism and dust.

- Write-protection

  A floppy disk has a write-protect switch that prevents the stored data from accidental erasure.



  You can read data from a write-protected floppy disk, but you cannot save data into the floppy disk or format it. NEC recommends that you should write-protect any floppy disk containing valuable data unless you are about to save data.

  To write-protect a 3.5-inch floppy disk, use the write-protect switch provided on its back.

- Disk format

  To write data into a floppy disk, the floppy disk must be "formatted." "Formatting" is to initialize the floppy disk and make it available for the system environment (operating system).

  IMPORTANT:

  - Formatting a used floppy disk clears all the data contained in it, if any.
  - Formatting a floppy disk from the DOS command line is not available with the server. Use a formatted floppy disk to work with it on the DOS command line.

  The format method depends on your operating system. Refer to the manual that comes with your operating system for details.

- Data backup

  "Data backup" is to copy data stored in a media into another media (e.g., floppy disk, digital audio tape, or magnet-optical disk).

  IMPORTANT: Make sure to make a back-up copy of every floppy disk, if provided.

  The floppy disk is a very delicate storage media. Dust or thermal changes, as well as operator's misconduct or sever failures, may cause loss of data. To avoid loss of data, NEC recommends that you should make a back-up copy of your valuable data on a regular basis.

CD-ROM

Keep the following notes in mind to use the CD-ROM for the server:

- Press the center of the storage case to remove the CD-ROM from the case.
- Do not drop the CD-ROM.
- Do not place anything on the CD-ROM or bend the CD-ROM.
- Do not attach any label onto the CD-ROM.
- Do not touch the signal side (nothing is printed on this side) with your hand.
- Place the CD-ROM with its printed side upward and gently put it on the tray.
- Do not scratch the CD-ROM or write anything directly on it with a pencil or ball-point pen.
- Do not leave the CD-ROM with foods and drinks, or in a place exposed to cigarette smoke.
- Do not leave the CD-ROM in a high-temperature place (e.g., place exposed to direct sunlight or close to a heater).
- When dust or fingerprints are attached on the CD-ROM, wipe the CD-ROM from its center to edge with a dry soft cloth slowly and gently.
- Use the CD cleaner to clean the CD-ROM. Do not use record spray/cleaner, benzene, or thinner.
- Keep the CD-ROM in a CD-ROM case when not in use.

Tape Media

The following describes data handling with the DAT, DLT, or AIT optionally available for the server.

- Saving your valuable data

  When you save your valuable data or programs into the cartridge tape, you should save them into two cartridge tapes to make the primary and secondary tapes.

  This enables you to restore your data from one tape when the other makes a read error, as well as to protect your valuable data and programs from loss.

- Three-generation data management

  NEC recommends that you should employ three-generation data management for data storage.

  Three-generation data management uses three cartridge tapes: A, B, and C. You save data to tape A on the first day, tape B on the second day, tape C on the third day, tape A on the forth day, and so on. That is, you save data into cartridge tapes cyclically from tape A through C.

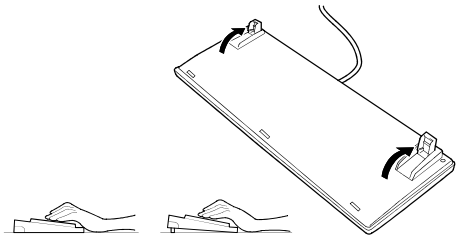
This enables you, for example, to use tape B to restore the data when tape C makes a read error. Also when both tapes B and C make a read error, you can restore your valuable data by using the data stored in tape A.

Keyboard

The keyboard is a device to instruct you computer by entering alphanumeric characters or symbols.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not pour any liquid such as water or put anything into the keyboard. Doing so may cause a failure of the keyboard.
- The keyboard provided with the server is designed for adjustment of an angle. Adjust the keyboard angle at which the keyboard is easy to operate. The adjustment assists in reducing strain on your shoulders, arms, and fingers.



NOTE: The keyboard functions depend on the software. Refer to the manual that comes with the software for details.

Mouse

Like the keyboard, the mouse is a device to instruct your computer. Many OS's and application software require the mouse for operation.

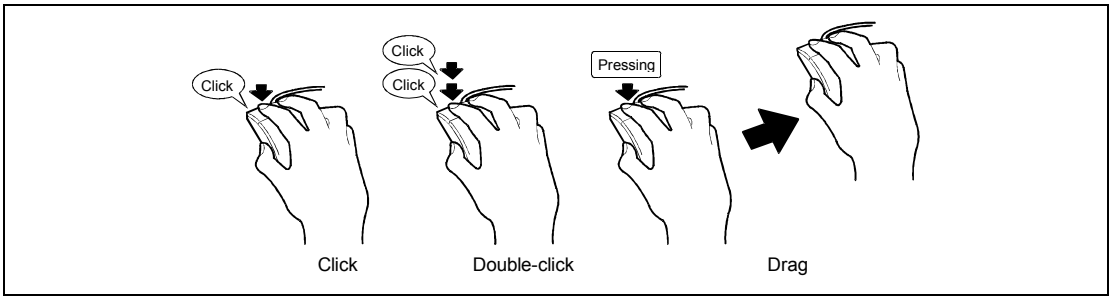
NOTES:

- Functions assigned to the mouse buttons vary depending on the software. For details, refer to the manual provided with the software.
- Use the mouse on a clean desk. Using the mouse on a dusty or dirty desk disturbs smooth movement or normal operation of the mouse. When your mouse movement seems dull, clean your mouse. (See Chapter 7.)

Mouse operation includes "Click," "Double-click," and "Drag."

Click:	Press the button only once and release it.
Double-click:	Press the button twice consecutively and release it.
Drag:	Press and hold the button and move the mouse.

Operation of the server involves combinations of these mouse operations and data entries with the keyboard.



Appendix C

IRQ

The factory-set interrupt requests is listed below. Find an appropriate one to install an optional device.

IRQ	Peripheral Device (Controller)	IRQ	Peripheral Device (Controller)
0	System timer	12	Mouse
1	Keyboard	13	Numeric processor
2	–	14	Primary IDE
3	COM2 serial port (PCI)	15	Secondary IDE
4	COM1 serial port (PCI)	16	USB
5	PCI	17	VGA
6	Floppy disk drive	18	–
7	PCI	19	USB
8	Real-time clock	30	LAN1
9	ACPI compliant system	31	LAN2
10	PCI	49	Adaptec SCSI
11	PCI	50	Adaptec SCSI

(This page is intentionally left blank.)

Appendix D

Installing Windows Server 2003

This section describes the procedures for installing Windows Server 2003 without using Express Setup tool.

BEFORE INSTALLING WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Please read carefully the following information BEFORE commencing your Windows Server 2003 Installation.

Installing Service Pack

You can install the Service Pack on the server. When the Service Pack is not attached to your system, prepare it by yourself.

Updating System

If you change the configuration of the system, update your system with NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM attached to your system.

Disk Configuration (Concerning the area displayed as 'MAINTE_P')

In disk area, an area displayed as 'MAINTE_P' may exist. This area is maintenance partition for saving configuration information and utilities. Please do not delete the area.

Re-installing to the Hard Disk which has been upgraded to Dynamic Disk

If you want to leave the existing partition when installing the system on the hard disk upgraded to Dynamic Disk, note the following issue:

- Do not select the partition that OS had been installed as the partition to install the OS newly.
- Select "Use the current File System" for the format of OS partition.

MO Device

If you specify the file system as NTFS with MO Device connected during the installation, the file system will not be converted normally. Disconnect MO Device and restart the installation from the beginning.

Partition Size

The minimum required partition size for installation of Windows Server 2003 is:

2900MB + Paging file size + Dump file size

Paging file size (recommended) = installed memory * 1.5

Dump file size = Installed memory size + 12 MB

IMPORTANT:

- The above paging file size is necessary for collecting debug information (memory dump). If you set the default value of paging file size smaller than the 'recommended' value, the accurate debug information(memory dump) may not be collected.
- The maximum paging file size which can be set on one partition is 4095MB. If the above paging file size exceeds 4095MB, specify 4095MB for the paging file size.
- The dump file size for the system with more than 2GB memory mounted is '2048MB + 12MB'.

For example, if installed memory size is 512MB, the minimum required partition size is

2900MB + (512MB * 1.5) + (512MB + 12MB) = 4192MB.

Dividing into the partition of the recommended size into multiple disks as written below will solve problem that it cannot be reserved in one disk.

1. Set the "Size required for installation + Paging file size".
2. See Chapter 5 and set that debugging information (equivalent to the dump file size) is to be written to a separate disk.

   (If the disk does not have enough free space to enable the file size to be written, then after installing the system using the "Size required for installation + Paging file size," install an additional new disk.)

INSTALLING WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Preparations for Installation

- NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition (CD-ROM)
- User's Guide
- Getting Started
- Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER

Creating "Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER"

Before installing, create Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

> **NOTE:** If you have already "Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER" for NEC Express5800 Server which you are going to install Windows Server 2003, you do not need to create it again.

You can create Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER with the following two procedures.

- Create from the menu which appears when running NEC Express5800 Server with NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

  If you have only NEC Express5800 Server to create Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER, use this procedure.

  If Windows Server 2003 or Windows NT 4.0 can be operated on NEC Express5800 Server, you can use the other procedure described later.

  Follow the steps below.

1. Prepare three 3.5-inch floppy disks.
2. Turn on your NEC Express5800 Server.
3. Set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the server.
4. Press the RESET switch or press Ctrl, Alt and Delete to reboot the server .(You may also turn off and then on again to reboot the server.)

   The system will boot from the CD-ROM and NEC EXPRESSBUILDER starts.
5. Select [Create Support Disk] from [Tools].
6. Select [Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER] from [Create Support Disk] menu.

7. Set a floppy disk in the floppy disk drive according to the instruction on the screen.

   Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER will be created.

   Write-protect and attach a label, then keep it safely.

- Create from [Master Control Menu]

  [Master Control Menu] runs on the following operating systems.

  – Windows Server 2003
  – Windows 2000
  – Windows Me/98/95
  – Windows NT 4.0
  – Windows XP

  You can create Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER from [Master Control Menu], if you have the computer on which the above operating systems operate.

  Follow the steps below.

1. Prepare three 3.5-inch floppy disks.
2. Run Windows Me/98/95, or Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Windows NT 4.0, Windows XP.
3. Set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the server.

   [Master Control Menu] will appear.
4. Click on [Setup] with left mouse button and click [Make OEM-DISK] and then [for Windows Server 2003].

   NOTE: You can do the same operation with the menu appeared by the Right-click.

5. Insert the floppy disk into the floppy disk drive according to the message.

   Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER will be created.

   Write-protect and attach a label, then keep it safely.

Windows Server 2003 Clean Installation

This section explains how to perform a clean installation of Windows Server 2003.

1. Turn on the system power.
2. Insert the Windows Server 2003 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Press **Ctrl** + **Alt** + **Delete** to reset the system.

   After a bootable operating system has been installed on the hard disk, press **Enter** while the message "Press any key to boot from CD..." is displayed at the top of the screen.

   If no bootable operating system exists on the hard disk, this step is unnecessary.

   The Windows Server 2003 setup screen will appear.

   If the screen is not displayed, **Enter** was not pressed properly.

   Begin after turning on the system power again.
4. Press **F6** in a few seconds when the window is in either of the following states.
   - "Setup is inspecting your computer's hardware configuration ..." is displayed.
   - A screen with a solid blue background is displayed.

   IMPORTANT: There is no visible indication on screen when **F6** has been pressed.
5. When the following message is displayed, press **S**.

   ```
   Setup could not determine the type of one or more mass storage devices
   installed in your system, or you have chosen to manually specify an adapter.
   Currently, Setup will load support for the following mass storage devices.
   ```

   The following message is displayed.

   ```
   Please inert the disk labeled
   manufacturer-supplied hardware support disk
   into Drive A:
   *Press ENTER when ready.
   ```
6. Insert the Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER into the floppy drive, and press **Enter**.

   A list of mass storage devices is displayed.

7. Select the proper SCSI Adapter and press **Enter**.

   – MegaRAID SCSI 320-1 RAID Controller Driver
   (When N8103-80F board is installed.)

   – MegaRAID SCSI 320-2 RAID Controller Driver
   (When N8103-81F board is installed.)

Continue performing tasks according to the subsequent messages that appear.

For details, refer to "Getting Started".

After installation is completed, be sure to execute the tasks described in "Driver Installation and Advanced Settings" and "Updating the System" of this manual.

Upgrade installation

Procedures below upgrade the installed Windows 2000 to Windows Server 2003.

1. Power on the system and start Windows 2000.
2. Log on as an administrator.
3. Insert the Windows Server 2003 CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

   Then, [Select an operation] dialog will appear.

   NOTE: If the [Select an operation] dialog box does not appear, start \SETUP.EXE from CD-ROM drive.

4. Select [Install Windows Server 2003].

   Then, a dialog box asks to select the upgrade or clear installation.

5. Select "Upgrade (recommended)" and click the Next.

   Follow the messages and continue. The system will automatically restart after copying the files.

   NOTE: You can leave the Windows Server 2003 CD-ROM in CD-ROM drive.

6. If a disk array controller is attached to the device, press **F6** while a message, "Setup is inspecting your computer's hardware configuration...", is on the screen.

   IMPORTANT: There is no visible indication on screen when **F6** has been pressed.

7. When the following message is displayed, press **S**.

   ```
   Setup could not determine the type of one or more mass storage devices
   installed in your system, or you have chosen to manually specify an adapter.
   Currently, Setup will load support for the following mass storage devices.
   ```

   The following message is displayed.

   ```
   Please inert the disk labeled
   manufacturer-supplied hardware support disk
   into Drive A:
   *Press ENTER when ready.
   ```

8. Insert the Windows Server 2003 OEM-DISK for EXPRESSBUILDER in the floppy disk drive, and press **Enter**. A list of SCSI adapters will be displayed.

9. If the optional board is installed, select the proper SCSI Adapter and press **Enter**.
   - MegaRAID SCSI 320-1 RAID Controller Driver (When N8103-80F board is installed.)
   - MegaRAID SCSI 320-2 RAID Controller Driver (When N8103-81F board is installed.)

   Continue performing tasks according to the subsequent messages that appear.
10. Update the system.
11. Install the driver and make detailed settings.

- SCSI controller (N8103-56F)

  If your system has a controller (N8103-56F), system error will occur during the upgrade installation to Windows 2003.

  Disconnect SCSI controller and restart the upgrade installation from the beginning.
- If PROSET II is already installed, uninstall the PROSET II before upgrading.

  If the teaming function is enabled, disable the function before uninstalling PROSET II.
- During upgrade installation, [Disk Insert] dialog box may appear.

  If it appears, click Cancel.
- When upgrade installation is completed,[Device Driver Wizard] dialog box may appear.

  If it appears, click Cancel, then update the system.
- When On-Board LAN is 1000Base, compare the value of "Jumbo Frames" in the [Advanced] of PROSET to the value of "Jumbo Frames" in the [Advanced] of adapter property dialog after updating the System.

  If those values are different, change the value of adapter property dialog to the value of PROSET.

Updating the System -Installing Service Pack -

To ensure normal system operation you should update your system using the following procedures.

1. Logon to the system using the administrator account or other account which is a member of the Administrators group.
2. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into CD-ROM drive.

   Master Control Menu is automatically appeared on the screen.
3. Click on [Setup] with left mouse button and click on [Update NEC Express5800 system] section.
4. Continue your work for system update as the following message.
5. Click on [Restart Computer] to restart the system.
6. Remove the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive immediately after clicking on [Restart Computer]

IMPORTANT: If you change the configuration of the system (by adding or removing hardware or Operating system software components) or repair the system, you must run the system update again.

DRIVER INSTALLATION AND ADVANCED SETTINGS

This section describes on how to install and setup various standard drivers mounted on the device.

For the information on installing and setting up the driver that is not described in this section, please refer to the document attached to the driver.

Install PROSet

PROSet is a utility that confirms the function of network contained in network driver.

Utilizing PROSet enables the following items:

- Confirm detailed information of the adapter.
- Diagnose loop back test, packet transmission test and so on.
- Setup of teaming.

Configuring several network adapters as one team provides the server a tolerant environment on any trouble and enhance throughput between the switches.

PROSet is necessary to utilize these features.

Follow the procedure below to install PROSet.

1. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
2. The [Windows Explorer] dialog starts.

   * The procedure in the case of the standard start menu

     Click Start menu and click [Windows Explorer].

   * The procedure in the case of the classic start menu

     Click Start menu, point to [Programs], [Accessories] and click [Windows Explorer].
3. Run "PROSet.exe" in the following directory.

   CD-ROM DriveLetter:\WINNT\DOTNET\BC1\PROSet\WS03XP32

   The [Intel(R) PROSet - InstallShield Wizard] dialog starts.
4. Click [Next].
5. Choose "I accept the terms in the license agreement" and click [Next].
6. Choose "Typical" and click [Next].
7. Click [Install].
8. When [InstallShield Wizard Completed] window is displayed, click [Finish].
9. Restart the system.

Network Driver

Specify the details of network driver.

Two standard network drivers that are mounted will be installed automatically, but the link speed and Duplex mode need to be specified manually.

[When PROSet is not installed]

1. The [Local Area Connection Properties] dialog box appears.

   * The procedure in the case of the standard start menu

     1. Click Start menu, Click [Control Panel], Click [Network Connections], and Click [Local Area Connection].

   * The procedure in the case of the classic start menu

     1. Click Start menu, Click [Settings] and Click [Network Connections].

        The [Network Connections] dialog box appears.

     2. Right-click [Local Area Connection] and click [Properties] from pop-up menu.

2. Click [Configure].

   The property dialog box for network adapter appears.

3. Click the [Advanced] and specify the [Link Speed & Duplex] value the same as the value specified for HUB.

4. Click [OK] on the property dialog box for network adapter.

[When PROSet is installed]

1. The [Intel PROSet] dialog box appears.

   * The procedure in the case of the standard start menu

     Click Start menu, point to [Control Panel] and click [Intel PROSet].

   * The procedure in the case of the classic start menu

     1. Click Start menu, point to [Settings] and click [Control Panel].

     2. Double-click [Intel(R) PROSet] on the [Control Panel] window.

2. Click [(Network Adapter Name)] in the list.

3. Click the [Speed] and specify the [Link Speed & Duplex Settings] value the same as the value specified for HUB.

4. Click [Apply] and click [OK].

Specify the other network driver with the same progress above.

Also, add or delete any protocols and services if necessary.

You can operate the process on the property dialog box for local area network which can be appeared from [Network and Dial-up Connection].

> **NOTE:** We recommend you to add "Network Monitor" at "Adding Services".
>
> "Network Monitor" can monitor frames (or packets) sent or received by a computer on which "Network Monitor" is installed. This is an effective tool for analyzing network faults.
>
> For information about the installation procedure, see Chapter 6.

Re-install the Network Driver

The network driver will be installed automatically.

Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT)/Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB)

Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT) is a feature that creates a group containing more than one adapter. With this feature, when the working adapter gets any problem, the process on it is automatically transferred to the other adapter in the group.

Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB) is a feature that creates a group containing more than one adapter and enhances the throughput by operating packet transmission from the server by all the adapters.

This feature includes AFT feature.

IMPORTANT:

- AFT/ALB setup must be operated after installing the drivers and restarting the system.
- The adapters specified as a group of Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT) can work, whether they are connected to same Hub or separated Hubs.
  But if they are connected to the separated Hubs, those Hubs must exist on the same LAN (Segment). Therefore, set the connection as cascade connection.
- The adapters specified as a group of Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB) can be connected to only Switching Hub.

If you want to utilize AFT/ALB feature, follow the procedure below to setup.

1. The [Intel PROSet] dialog box appears.

   * The procedure in the case of the standard start menu

     Click Start menu, point to [Control Panel] and click [Intel PROSet].

   * The procedure in the case of the classic start menu

     1. Click Start menu, point to [Settings] and click [Control Panel].
     2. Double-click [Intel(R) PROSet] on the [Control Panel] window.

2. Put the mouse cursor on "(Network Adapter Name)" in the list and right-click.

   Pull-down menu appears.

3. Select [Add to Team>] and then click [Create New Team ...].

   The [Teaming Wizard] dialog box appears.

4. Select "Adapter Fault Tolerance" or "Adaptive Load Balancing" and click [Next].
5. Check the adapter to join the team and click [Next].
6. Click [Finish].
7. The setup will go back to [Intel(R) PROSet] dialog box, so click [OK].
8. Restart the system.

SETTING FOR COLLECTING MEMORY DUMP (DEBUG INFORMATION)

Set for collecting memory dump using the procedure described in Chapter 5.

Appendix E

Installing Windows 2000

This section describes the procedures for installing Windows 2000 without using Express Setup tool.

BEFORE INSTALLING WINDOWS 2000

Please read carefully the following information BEFORE commencing your Windows 2000 Installation.

Installing Service Pack

You can install the Service Pack on the server. When the Service Pack is not attached to your system, prepare it by yourself.

Updating System

If you change the configuration of the system, update your system with NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM attached to your system.

Disk Configuration (Concerning the area displayed as 'MAINTE_P')

In disk area, an area displayed as 'MAINTE_P' may exist. This area is maintenance partition for saving configuration information and utilities. Please do not delete the area.

Re-installing to the Hard Disk which has been upgraded to Dynamic Disk

If you want to leave the existing partition when installing the system on the hard disk upgraded to Dynamic Disk, note the following issue:

- Do not select the partition that OS had been installed as the partition to install the OS newly.
- Select "Use the current File System" for the format of OS partition.

MO Device

If you specify the file system as NTFS with MO Device connected during the installation, the file system will not be converted normally. Disconnect MO Device and restart the installation from the beginning.

Partition Size

The minimum required partition size for installation of Windows 2000 is:

1000MB + Paging file size + Dump file size

Paging file size (recommended) = installed memory * 1.5

Dump file size = Installed memory size + 12 MB

IMPORTANT:

- The above paging file size is necessary for collecting debug information (memory dump). If you set the default value of paging file size smaller than the 'recommended' value, the accurate debug information(memory dump) may not be collected.
- The maximum paging file size which can be set on one partition is 4095MB. If the above paging file size exceeds 4095MB, specify 4095MB for the paging file size.
- The dump file size for the system with more than 2GB memory mounted is '2048MB + 12MB'.

For example, if installed memory size is 512MB, the minimum required partition size is

1000 + (512*1.5) + (512+12) = 2292MB.

Dividing into the partition of the recommended size into multiple disks as written below will solve problem that it cannot be reserved in one disk.

1. Set the "Size required for installation + Paging file size".
2. See Chapter 5 and set that debugging information (equivalent to the dump file size) is to be written to a separate disk.

   (If the disk does not have enough free space to enable the file size to be written, then after installing the system using the "Size required for installation + Paging file size," install an additional new disk.)

INSTALLING WINDOWS 2000

Preparations for Installation

- NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM
- Microsoft Windows 2000 Server(CD-ROM) or Microsoft Windows 2000 Advanced Server (CD-ROM)
- Windows 2000 Service Pack (CD-ROM)
- User's Guide
- Getting Started
- Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER

Creating "Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER"

Before installing, create Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

> **NOTE:** If you have already "Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER" for NEC Express5800 Server which you are going to install Windows 2000, you do not need to create it again.

You can create Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER with the following two procedures.

- Create from the menu which appears when running NEC Express5800 Server with NEC EXPRESSBUILDER.

  If you have only NEC Express5800 Server to create Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER, use this procedure.

  If Windows 2000 or Windows NT 4.0 can be operated on NEC Express5800 Server, you can use the other procedure described later.

  Follow the steps below.

1. Prepare three 3.5-inch floppy disks.
2. Turn on your NEC Express5800 Server.
3. Set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the server.
4. Press the RESET switch or press Ctrl, Alt and Delete to reboot the server .(You may also turn off and then on again to reboot the server.)

   The system will boot from the CD-ROM and NEC EXPRESSBUILDER starts.
5. Select [Create Support Disk] from [Tools].
6. Select [Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER] from [Create Support Disk] menu.

7. Set a floppy disk in the floppy disk drive according to the instruction on the screen.

Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER will be created.

Write-protect and attach a label, then keep it safely.

■ Create from [Master Control Menu]

[Master Control Menu] runs on the following operating systems.

- Windows Me/98/95
- Windows 2000
- Windows NT 4.0
- Windows XP

You can create Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER from [Master Control Menu], if you have the computer on which the above operating systems operate.

Follow the steps below.

1. Prepare three 3.5-inch floppy disks.

2. Run Windows Me/98/95, or Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0, Windows XP.

3. Set the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the server.

[Master Control Menu] will appear.

4. Click on [Setup] with left mouse button and click [Make OEM-DISK] and then [for Windows 2000].

> **NOTE:** You can do the same operation with the menu appeared by the Right-click.

5. Insert the floppy disk into the floppy disk drive according to the message.

Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER will be created.

Write-protect and attach a label, then keep it safely.

Windows 2000 Clean Installation

This section explains how to perform a clean installation of Windows 2000.

1. Turn on the system power.
2. Insert the Windows 2000 CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Press **Ctrl** + **Alt** + **Delete** to reset the system.

   After a bootable operating system has been installed on the hard disk, press **Enter** while the message "Press any key to boot from CD..." is displayed at the top of the screen.

   If no bootable operating system exists on the hard disk, this step is unnecessary.

   The Windows 2000 setup screen will appear.

   If the screen is not displayed, **Enter** was not pressed properly.

   Begin after turning on the system power again.
4. Press **F6** in a few seconds when the window is in either of the following states.
   - "Setup is inspecting your computer's hardware configuration ..." is displayed.
   - A screen with a solid blue background is displayed.

   IMPORTANT: There is no visible indication on screen when **F6** has been pressed.
5. When the following message is displayed, press **S**.

   ```
   Setup could not determine the type of one or more mass storage devices
   installed in your system, or you have chosen to manually specify an adapter.
   Currently, Setup will load support for the following mass storage devices.
   ```

   The following message is displayed.

   ```
   Please inert the disk labeled
   manufacturer-supplied hardware support disk
   into Drive A:
   *Press ENTER when ready.
   ```
6. Insert the Windows 2000 OEM-DISK for NEC EXPRESSBUILDER into the floppy drive, and press **Enter**.

   A list of mass storage devices is displayed.
7. Select the [Adaptec Ultra320 Family Manager Set - Microsoft Disk] and press **Enter**.

   Then, it returns to the screen of Step 5.

8. Select the proper SCSI Adapter and press **Enter**.

   – MegaRAID SCSI 320-1 Controller Driver
   (When N8103-80F board is installed.)

   – MegaRAID SCSI 320-2 Controller Driver
   (When N8103-81F board is installed.)

Continue performing tasks according to the subsequent messages that appear.

For details, refer to "Getting Started".

After installation is completed, be sure to execute the tasks described in "Driver Installation and Advanced Settings" and "Updating the System" of this manual.

Updating the System -Installing Service Pack -

To ensure normal system operation you should update your system using the following procedures.

1. Logon to the system using the administrator account or other account which is a member of the Administrators group.
2. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into CD-ROM drive.

   Master Control Menu is automatically appeared on the screen.
3. Click on [Setup] with left mouse button and click on [Update NEC Express5800 system] section.
4. Continue your work for system update as the following message.
5. Click on [Restart Computer] to restart the system.
6. Remove the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive immediately after clicking on [Restart Computer]

IMPORTANT: If you change the configuration of the system (by adding or removing hardware or Operating system software components) or repair the system, you must run the system update again.

DRIVER INSTALLATION AND ADVANCED SETTINGS

This section describes on how to install and setup various standard drivers mounted on the device.

For the information on installing and setting up the driver that is not described in this section, please refer to the document attached to the driver.

Install PROSetII

PROSetII is a utility that confirms the function of network contained in network driver. Be sure to install PROSetII for setting GigaEthernet. Utilizing PROSetII enables the following issues:

- Confirm detailed information of the adapter.
- Diagnose loop back test, packet transmission test and so on.
- Specify teaming.

Configuring several network adapters as one team provides the server an environment tolerant on any trouble and enhance through put between the switches.

PROSetII is necessary to utilize these features.

Follow the procedure below to install PROSetII.

1. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Click Start menu, point to [Program], [Accessory] and click [Explorer].
3. Run "PROSET.MSI" in the following directory.

   <CD-ROM Drive Letter>:\WINNT\W2K\PC62C\HD1\WINDOWS\PROSET2\IA32\PROSET.MSI

   The [Intel(R) PROSetII - InstallShield Wizard] dialog starts.
4. Choose "I accept the terms in the license agreement" and click [Next].
5. Choose "Typical" and click [Next].
6. Click [Install].
7. When [InstallShield Wizard Completed] window is displayed, click [Finish].
8. Restart the system.

Network Driver

Two standard network driver that are mounted will be installed automatically when updating the system, but the link speed and duplex mode need to be specified manually.

If you want to specify the settings, follow the procedure for each situation.

> **NOTE:** We recommend you to add "Network Monitor" at "Adding Services".
>
> "Network Monitor" can monitor frames (or packets) sent or received by a computer on which "Network Monitor" is installed. This is an effective tool for analyzing network faults.
>
> For information about the installation procedure, see Chapter 6.

1. Double-click the [Intel(R) PROSet II] icon on the [Control Panel] window.
2. Put the cursor on the [Intel(R)82546EB Based Dual Port Network Connection] in the list.
3. Click [Link Config] tab and specify the [Link Speed & Duplex value the same as the value specified for HUB.
4. Put the cursor to the [Intel(R)82546EB Based Dual Port Network Connection #2] in the list.
5. Click [Link Config] tab and specify the [Link Speed & Duplex] value the same as the value specified for HUB.

Also, add/delete any protocols and services if necessary.

You can operate the process from [Network and Dial-up Connection] to display the property dialog box for local area network.

Re-install the Network Driver

After installing OS and deleting the network drivers, if you want to re-install the network drivers, follow the procedure below.

1. Restart OS and logon to your system.
2. [Upgrade Device Driver Wizard] dialog box appears.

   Click [Next].
3. Confirm that the [Search for a suitable driver for my device (recommended)] radio button is selected and click [Next].
4. Select the [Specify a location] check box and deselect other check boxes.

   Click [Next].
5. Other [Upgrade Device Driver Wizard] dialog box opens.

   When using [Intel(R)82546EB Based Dual Port Network Connection], specify [<CD-ROM drive letter>:\WINNT\W2K\PC62C\FD1].

   When using [Intel(R)82546EB Based Dual Port Network Connection #2], specify [CD-ROM drive letter>:\WINNT\W2K\PC62C\FD1].

   Then click [OK].
6. Click [Next].
7. Click [Finished].
8. Other [Upgrade Device Driver Wizard] dialog box appears.

   Refer to the step 2 to 7 to install.

   After re-installing the network drivers, the link speed and Duplex mode need to be specified.

   Refer to "Network Driver" described earlier.

Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT)/Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB)

Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT) is a feature that creates a group containing more than one adapter. With this feature, when the working adapter gets any problem, the process on it is automatically transferred to the other adapter in the group.

Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB) is a feature that creates a group containing more than one adapter and enhances the throughput by operating packet transmission from the server by all the adapters.

This feature includes AFT feature.

> ■ **IMPORTANT:**
>
> ■ AFT/ALB setup must be operated after installing the drivers and restarting the system.
>
> ■ The adapters specified as a group of Adapter Fault Tolerance (AFT) can work, whether they are connected to same Hub or separated Hubs.
> But if they are connected to the separated Hubs, those Hubs must exist on the same LAN (Segment). Therefore, set the connection as cascade connection.
>
> ■ The adapters specified as a group of Adaptive Load Balancing (ALB) can be connected to only Switching Hub.

If you want to utilize AFT/ALB feature, follow the procedure below to setup.

1. Double-click [Intel(R) PROSet II] on the [Control Panel] window.

   The [Intel(R) PROSet II] dialog box appears.

2. Put the mouse cursor on "(Network Adapter Name)" in the list and right-click.

   Pull-down menu appears.

3. Select [Add to Team>] and then click [Create New Team ...].

   The [Teaming Wizard] dialog box appears.

4. Select "Adapter Fault Tolerance" or "Adaptive Load Balancing" and click [Next].

5. Click [Next]

6. Check the adapter to join the team and click [Next].

7. Click [Finish].

8. The setup will go back to [Intel(R) PROSet II] dialog box, so click [OK].

9. Restart the system.

Display Driver

Install the display driver using the following procedure.

1. Insert the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Run the "CD-ROM drive name:\WINNT\VIDEO\W2K\setup.exe".

   Follow the message on the screen.

   When the message "Digital Signature Not Found" message appears, click on [Yes].
3. Remove the NEC EXPRESSBUILDER CD-ROM and restart the system following a message on the screen.

SETTING FOR COLLECTING MEMORY DUMP (DEBUG INFORMATION)

Set for collecting memory dump using the procedure described in Chapter 5.

Appendix F

Product Configuration Record Table

Use this table for information about setup and system environment change.

Hardware

Main Unit						
	Model name		Serial No.		Date Installed	
CPU						
#1	Clock		Serial No.		Date Installed	
#2	Clock		Serial No.		Date Installed	
Memory						
#1A, #1B	Size		Serial No.		Date Installed	
#2A, #2B	Size		Serial No.		Date Installed	
#3A, #3B	Size		Serial No.		Date Installed	
Monitor						
	Type		Model name		Serial No.	
					Date Installed	
Hard Disk						
ID0	Type			Serial No.		
	Capacity			Date Installed		
	Type number					
ID1	Type			Serial No.		
	Capacity			Date Installed		
	Type number					
ID2	Type			Serial No.		
	Capacity			Date Installed		
	Type number					

PCI Slot low-profile (1C)						
	Model name				Serial No.	
					Date Installed	
PCI Slot full-height (1B)						
	Model name				Serial No.	
					Date Installed	
Additional Cabinet for Disk						
	Model name				Serial No.	
					Date Installed	
External Peripheral Device 1						
	Model name				Serial No.	
	Manufacturer				Date Installed	
External Peripheral Device 2						
	Model name				Serial No.	
	Manufacturer				Date Installed	
External Peripheral Device 3						
	Model name				Serial No.	
	Manufacturer				Date Installed	
External Peripheral Device 4						
	Model name				Serial No.	
	Manufacturer				Date Installed	

Software

Firmware version				
OS Application of RUR media	 ☐ Apply	Name: Name:		Version: Version:
File system	☐ FAT ☐ Others (	☐ HPFS	☐ NTFS)	
Bundled software installed				
Licensed software installed				
Application running when a failure occurred				

(This page is intentionally left blank.)